

1 Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Systems

# 2 Business Transaction Protocol

3  
4 An OASIS Committee Specification

5 ***CURRENT STATUS : committee draft for review***

6  
7 Version 1.0 [0.9.5]

8 DD Mmm 2002 [3 April 2002 18:50]

9  
10

<i>Working Draft 0.9</i>	24 October 2001
<i>Working Draft 0.9.1 – includes all issues agreed 16 Jan 2002, and 82 (deferred)</i>	18 January 2002
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2 – all issues as agreed 13 February 2002</i>	13 February 2002
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2.1 – issues 2, 3, 15, 19, 50, 67, 95</i>	26 February 2002
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2.2 – as accepted 27 Feb 2002+ corrections, issues 29, 60, 97, 99</i>	12 March 2002
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2.3 – 0.9.2.2 and issue 106, 96, 98</i>	18 March 2002
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2.4 – as accepted 27 Mar 2002 + 61, 87, 100, 107, 108, 109, inclusion of model</i>	3 April 2002
<b><i>Review Draft 0.9.5 – review draft – all changes merged</i></b>	<b>3 April 2002</b>

11

12

## Copyright and related notices

Copyright © The Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards (OASIS), 2002. All Rights Reserved.

This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works that comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied, published and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph are included on all such copies and derivative works. However, this document itself may not be modified in any way, such as by removing the copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as needed for the purpose of developing OASIS specifications, in which case the procedures for copyrights defined in the OASIS Intellectual Property Rights document must be followed, or as required to translate it into languages other than English.

The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its successors or assigns.

This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

---

OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights that might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this document or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available; neither does it represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on OASIS's procedures with respect to rights in OASIS specifications can be found at the OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any assurances of licenses to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license or permission for the use of such proprietary rights by implementors or users of this specification, can be obtained from the OASIS Executive Director.

OASIS invites any interested party to bring to its attention any copyrights, patents or patent applications, or other proprietary rights which may cover technology that may be required to implement this specification. Please address the information to the OASIS Executive Director.

52 **Acknowledgements**

53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59

The members of the OASIS Business Transactions Technical Committee contributed to the development of this specification. The following were members of the committee for at least part of the time from July 2001 until the agreement of the specification are listed below. Some TC members changed their affiliation to OASIS members, but remained members of the TC:

Mike Abbott	CodeMetamorphosis
Alex Berson	Entrust, Inc
Geoff Brown	Oracle
Doug Bunting	Sun Microsystems
Fred Carter	Sun Microsystems; individual
Alex Ceponkus	Bowstreet Inc.; individual
Pyounguk Cho	Iona
Victor Corrales	Hewlett-Packard Co.
Bill Cox	BEA Systems, Inc.
Sanjay Dalal	BEA Systems, Inc.
Alan Davies	SeeBeyond Inc.
Hatem El-Sebaaly	IPNet
Ed Felt	BEA Systems, Inc.
Tony Fletcher	Choreology Ltd
Bill Flood	Sybase
Peter Furniss	Choreology Ltd
Alastair Green	Choreology Ltd
Mark Hale	Interwoven Inc.
Gordon Hamilton	AppliedTheory, individual
Roddy Herries	Choreology Ltd
Mark Little	Hewlett-Packard Co.
Anne Manes	Systinet
Savas Parastatidis	Hewlett-Packard Co.
Bill Pope	Bowstreet, individual
Mark Potts	Individual, Talking Blocks
Pal Takacsi-Nagy	BEA Systems, Inc.
James Tauber	Bowstreet, individual
Sazi Temel	BEA Systems, Inc.
Steve Viens	individual
Jim Webber	Hewlett-Packard Co.
Steve White	SeeBeyond Inc.

60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66

The primary authors and editors of the main body of the specification were, in alphabetical order

Alex Ceponkus ([alex@ceponkus.org](mailto:alex@ceponkus.org))  
Sanjay Dalal ([sanjay.dalal@bea.com](mailto:sanjay.dalal@bea.com))

67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90

Tony Fletcher ([tony.fletcher@choreology.com](mailto:tony.fletcher@choreology.com))  
Peter Furniss ([peter.furniss@choreology.com](mailto:peter.furniss@choreology.com))  
Alastair Green ([alastair.green@choreology.com](mailto:alastair.green@choreology.com))  
Bill Pope ([zpope@pobox.com](mailto:zpope@pobox.com))

We thank Pal Takacsi-Nagy of BEA Systems Inc and Bill Pope for their efforts in chairing the Technical Committee, and Karl Best of OASIS for his guidance on the organization of the Committee's work.

*In memory of Ed Felt*

Ed Felt of BEA Systems Inc. was an active and highly valued contributor to the work of the OASIS Business Transactions Technical Committee.

His many years of design and implementation experience with the Tuxedo system, Weblogic's Java transactions, and Weblogic Integration's Conversation Management Protocol were brought to bear in his comments on and proposals for this specification.

He was killed in the crash of the hijacked United Airlines flight 93 near to Pittsburgh, on 11 September 2001.

## 90 **Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style**

91  
92 The initial letters of words in terms which are defined (at least in their substantive or  
93 infinitive form) in the Glossary are capitalized whenever the term used with that exact  
94 meaning, thus:

95  
96 Cancel  
97 Participant  
98 Application Message  
99

100 The first occurrence of a word defined in the Glossary is given in bold, thus:

### 101 **Coordinator**

102  
103 Such words may be given in bold in other contexts (for example, in section headings or  
104 captions) to emphasize their status as formally defined terms.

105  
106 The names of abstract BTP protocol messages are given in upper-case throughout:

107  
108  
109 BEGIN  
110 CONTEXT  
111 RESIGN  
112

113 The values of elements within a BTP protocol message are indicated thus:

114  
115 BEGIN/atom  
116

117 BTP protocol messages that are related semantically are joined by an ampersand:

118  
119 BEGIN/atom & CONTEXT  
120

121 BTP protocol messages that are transmitted together in a compound are joined by a + sign:

122  
123 ENROL + VOTE  
124

125 XML schemata and instances are given in Courier:

126  
127 <btpr:begin> ... </btpr:begin>  
128

129 Terms such as **MUST**, **MAY** and so on, which are defined in RFC [TBD number], “[TBD  
130 title]” are used with the meanings given in that document but are given in lowercase bold,  
131 rather than in upper-case:

132  
133 An Inferior **must** send one of RESIGN, PREPARED or CANCELLED to its  
134 Superior.  
135  
136

136	<b>Contents</b>	
137		
138	Copyright and related notices.....	2
139	Acknowledgements .....	3
140	Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style .....	5
141	Contents .....	6
142	<b>Part 1. Purpose and Features of BTP .....</b>	<b>11</b>
143	Introduction.....	11
144	Development and Maintenance of the Specification.....	12
145	Structure of this specification.....	13
146	Conceptual Model .....	14
147	Example Core.....	14
148	Business transactions .....	15
149	External Effects.....	16
150	Two-phase outcome .....	17
151	Actors and roles .....	18
152	Superior:Inferior relationship.....	18
153	Business transaction trees .....	19
154	Atoms and Cohesions .....	21
155	Participants, Sub-Coordinator and Sub-Composers .....	22
156	Business transaction creation .....	23
157	Business transaction propagation.....	24
158	Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinator and Sub-Composers).....	25
159	“Checking” and context-reply.....	26
160	Message sequence.....	27
161	Control of inferiors .....	32
162	Evolution of confirm-set .....	35
163	Confirm-set of intermediates .....	38
164	Optimisations and variations .....	40
165	Spontaneous prepared .....	40
166	One-shot.....	41
167	Resignation .....	43
168	One-phase confirmation.....	44
169	Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions .....	44
170	Recovery and failure handling.....	45
171	Types of failure .....	45
172	Persistent information .....	46
173	Recovery messages .....	47
174	Redirection.....	48
175	Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit .....	49
176	Contradictions and hazard.....	50
177	Relation of BTP to application and carrier protocols .....	51
178	Other elements .....	52
179	Identifiers .....	52
180	Addresses .....	53
181	Qualifiers .....	54

182	<b>Part 2. Normative Specification of BTP .....</b>	<b>54</b>
183	Actors, Roles and Relationships .....	54
184	Relationships.....	55
185	Roles .....	56
186	Roles involved in the outcome relationships .....	57
187	Superior.....	57
188	Inferior .....	58
189	Enroller .....	59
190	Participant .....	60
191	Sub-coordinator.....	61
192	Sub-composer .....	61
193	Roles involved in the control relationships.....	61
194	Decider.....	61
195	Coordinator .....	62
196	Composer .....	62
197	Terminator.....	63
198	Initiator.....	64
199	Factory .....	64
200	Other roles .....	64
201	Redirector.....	64
202	Status Requestor.....	65
203	Summary of relationships .....	65
204	Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts .....	67
205	Addresses.....	67
206	Request/response pairs.....	69
207	Compounding messages .....	69
208	Extensibility.....	71
209	Messages.....	71
210	Qualifiers .....	71
211	Messages not restricted to outcome or control relationships. ....	72
212	CONTEXT.....	73
213	CONTEXT_REPLY .....	74
214	REQUEST_STATUS .....	75
215	STATUS .....	76
216	FAULT.....	77
217	REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, INFERIOR_STATUSES .....	80
218	Messages used in the outcome relationships .....	80
219	ENROL .....	80
220	ENROLLED .....	81
221	RESIGN .....	82
222	RESIGNED.....	83
223	PREPARE.....	84
224	PREPARED .....	84
225	CONFIRM .....	86
226	CONFIRMED.....	87
227	CANCEL .....	88
228	CANCELLED.....	89

229	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE .....	90
230	HAZARD .....	91
231	CONTRADICTION .....	92
232	SUPERIOR_STATE .....	93
233	INFERIOR_STATE .....	94
234	REDIRECT .....	96
235	Messages used in control relationships .....	97
236	BEGIN .....	97
237	BEGUN .....	98
238	PREPARE_INFERIORS .....	99
239	CONFIRM_TRANSACTION .....	101
240	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED .....	103
241	CANCEL_TRANSACTION .....	104
242	CANCEL_INFERIORS .....	105
243	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED .....	106
244	REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES .....	107
245	INFERIOR_STATUSES .....	108
246	Groups – combinations of related messages .....	110
247	CONTEXT & application message .....	110
248	CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL .....	111
249	CONTEXT_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED .....	112
250	CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & application message (& PREPARED) .....	113
251	BEGUN & CONTEXT .....	113
252	BEGIN & CONTEXT .....	113
253	Standard qualifiers .....	114
254	Transaction timelimit .....	114
255	Inferior timeout .....	114
256	Minimum inferior timeout .....	115
257	Inferior name .....	116
258	State Tables .....	117
259	Status queries .....	117
260	Decision events .....	118
261	Disruptions – failure events .....	118
262	Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication mechanism .....	119
263	Meaning of state table events .....	119
264	Persistent information .....	123
265	Superior state table .....	127
266	Inferior state table .....	131
267	Persistent information .....	136
268	XML representation of Message Set .....	136
269	Addresses .....	137
270	Qualifiers .....	137
271	Identifiers .....	138
272	Message References .....	138
273	Messages .....	138
274	CONTEXT .....	138
275	CONTEXT_REPLY .....	138



276	REQUEST_STATUS .....	139
277	STATUS .....	139
278	FAULT.....	139
279	ENROL .....	140
280	ENROLLED .....	141
281	RESIGN .....	141
282	RESIGNED.....	141
283	PREPARE.....	142
284	PREPARED .....	142
285	CONFIRM .....	142
286	CONFIRMED.....	143
287	CANCEL .....	143
288	CANCELLED.....	144
289	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE .....	144
290	HAZARD.....	144
291	CONTRADICTION.....	145
292	SUPERIOR_STATE.....	145
293	INFERIOR_STATE.....	145
294	REDIRECT .....	146
295	BEGIN .....	146
296	BEGUN.....	146
297	PREPARE_INFERIORS .....	147
298	CONFIRM_TRANSACTION .....	147
299	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED .....	148
300	CANCEL_TRANSACTION .....	148
301	CANCEL_INFERIORS .....	148
302	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED.....	149
303	REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES .....	149
304	INFERIOR_STATUSES .....	149
305	Standard qualifiers .....	150
306	Transaction timelimit .....	150
307	Inferior timeout .....	150
308	Minimum inferior timeout .....	150
309	Inferior name.....	150
310	Compounding of Messages.....	150
311	XML Schemas .....	151
312	XML schema for BTP messages.....	151
313	XML schema for standard qualifiers .....	164
314	Carrier Protocol Bindings .....	166
315	Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma.....	166
316	Bindings for request/response carrier protocols .....	167
317	Request/response exploitation rules.....	168
318	SOAP Binding .....	169
319	Example scenario using SOAP binding .....	171
320	SOAP + Attachments Binding.....	173
321	Conformance .....	175
322	<b>Part 3. Glossary .....</b>	<b>178</b>

323

324

# Part 1. Purpose and Features of BTP

## Introduction

This document, which describes and defines the Business Transaction Protocol (BTP), is a Committee Specification of the Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards (OASIS). The standard has been authored by the collective work of representatives of numerous software product companies (listed on page 3), grouped in the Business Transactions Technical Committee (BT TC) of OASIS.

The OASIS BTP Technical Committee began its work at an inaugural meeting in San Jose, Calif. on 13 March 2001, and this specification was endorsed as a Committee Specification by a [\*\*\* unanimous] vote on [\*\*\* date].

BTP is designed to allow coordination of application work between multiple participants owned or controlled by autonomous organizations. BTP uses a two-phase outcome coordination protocol to ensure the overall application achieves a consistent result. BTP permits the consistent outcome to be defined *a priori* -- all the work is confirmed or none is -- (an atomic business transaction or atom) or for application intervention into the selection of the work to be confirmed (a cohesive business transaction or cohesion).

BTP's ability to coordinate between services offered by autonomous organizations makes it ideally suited for use in a Web Services environment. For this reason this specification defines communications protocol bindings which target the emerging Web Services arena, while preserving the capacity to carry BTP messages over other communication protocols. Protocol message structure and content constraints are schematized in XML, and message content is encoded in XML instances.

The BTP allows great flexibility in the implementation of business transaction participants. Such participants enable the consistent reversal of the effects of atoms. BTP participants may use recorded before- or after-images, or compensation operations to provide the "roll-forward, roll-back" capacity which enables their subordination to the overall outcome of an atomic business transaction.

The BTP is an interoperation protocol which defines the roles which software agents (actors) may occupy, the messages that pass between such actors, and the obligations upon and commitments made by actors-in-roles. It does not define the programming interfaces to be used by application programmers to stimulate message flow or associated state changes.

The BTP is based on a permissive and minimal approach, where constraints on implementation choices are avoided. The protocol also tries to avoid unnecessary dependencies on other standards, with the aim of lowering the hurdle to implementation.

368  
369  
370  
371  
372  
373  
374  
375  
376  
377  
378  
379  
380  
381  
382  
383  
384  
385  
386  
387  
388  
389  
390  
391  
392  
393  
394  
395  
396  
397  
398  
399  
400  
401  
402  
403  
404  
405  
406

## Development and Maintenance of the Specification

For more information on the genesis and development of BTP, please consult the OASIS BT Technical Committee's website, at

<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transactions/>

As of the date of adoption of this specification the OASIS BT Technical Committee is still in existence, with the charter of

- ❑ maintaining the specification in the light of implementation experiences
- ❑ coordinating publicity for BTP
- ❑ liaising with other standards bodies whose work affects or may be affected by BTP
- ❑ reviewing the appropriate time, in the light of implementation experience and user support, to put BTP forward for adoption as a full OASIS standard

If you have a question about the functionality of BTP, or wish to report an error or to suggest a modification to the specification, please subscribe to:

[bt-spec@lists.oasis-open.org](mailto:bt-spec@lists.oasis-open.org)

Any employee of a corporate member of OASIS, or any individual member of OASIS, may subscribe to OASIS mail lists, and is also entitled to apply to join the Technical Committee.

The main list of the committee is:

[business-transaction@lists.oasis-open.org](mailto:business-transaction@lists.oasis-open.org)

## Structure of this specification

This specification document includes, in Part 1, an explanation and description of the conceptual model of BTP, and, in Part 2, a fully normative specification of the protocol.

The use and definition of terms in the model can be regarded as authoritative but should not be taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. In case of (unintended) disagreement between the parts, Part 2 takes precedence over Part 1.

Part 1 contains

- Executive Summary
- This document structure description
- Conceptual Model

Part 2 contains the following sections:

- Actors, roles and relationships: defines the model entities used in the specification, their relationships to each other and indicates the correspondence of these to real implementation constructs; this section also lists which messages are sent and received for each role.
- Abstract message set: defines a set of abstract messages that are exchanged between software agents performing the various roles to create, progress and complete the relationships between those roles. For each abstract message the parameters are defined and the associated “contract” is stated – the contract defines the meaning of the message in terms of what the receiver can infer of the sender’s state and the intended effect on the receiver. This section does not itself specify a particular encoding or representation of the messages nor a single mechanism for communicating the messages
- State tables: specifies the state transitions for the Superior and Inferior roles, detailing when particular messages may be sent and when internal decisions may be made that affect the state
- XML representation: defines an XML representation of the message set. Other representations of the message set, or parts of it are possible – these may or may not be suitable for interoperation between heterogeneous implementations.
- Carrier protocol bindings: defines a “carrier binding proforma” that details the information required to specify the mapping to a particular carrier protocol such that independent implementations can interoperate. The proforma requires an identification for the binding, the nature of the addressing information used with the binding, how the messages are represented and encoded and how they are carried (e.g. which carrier protocol messages or fields they are in) and may include other requirements.
- Using the carrier protocol proforma, this section fully specifies bindings to SOAP 1.1, using the XML representation of the abstract message set.
- Conformance definitions: defines combinations of facilities (expressed as roles) that an implementation can declare it supports

Part 3 contains a glossary that provides succinct definitions of terms used in the rest of the document.

452

## 453 **Conceptual Model**

454 This section introduces the concepts of BTP. Its use and definition of terms can be regarded  
455 as authoritative but should not be taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. Part 2 of  
456 the specification is fully normative and in case of disagreement takes precedence over  
457 statements or examples in this section.

458

459 BTP is designed to make minimal assumptions about the implementation structure and the  
460 properties of the carrier protocols. This allows BTP to be bound to more than one carrier  
461 protocol. BTP implementations built in quite different ways should be able to interoperate if  
462 they are bound to the same carrier protocol. This flexibility requires that much of the text is  
463 abstract and may be difficult to visualise in the absence of a particular implementation pattern  
464 or carrier protocol. To aid understanding some possible implementation examples are  
465 presented in the following text.

466

467

### **Example Core**

468 An advanced manufacturing company (*Manufacturer A*) orders the parts and services it  
469 needs on-line. It has existing relationships with parts suppliers and providers of services  
470 such as shipping and insurance. All of the communications between these organizations  
471 is via XML messages. The interactions of these business transactions include:

472

473

474

475

476

477

478

479

480

481

482

483

1. *Manufacturer A's* production scheduling system sends an Order message to a  
*Supplier*.
2. The *Supplier's* order processing system sends back an order confirmation with the  
details of the order.
3. *Manufacturer A* orders delivery from a *Shipper* for the ordered parts.
4. The *Shipper* evaluates the request and based on its truck schedule it sends back a  
positive or negative reply.
5. Some shipments need to be insured based on their value, where they are shipped  
from, and method of transportation. *Manufacturer A* sends an Order message to an  
*Insurer* when this is necessary.
6. The *Insurer* responds with a bid or a no-bid response.

484

Problems have arisen with some of these interactions.

485

486

487

488

489

490

491

492

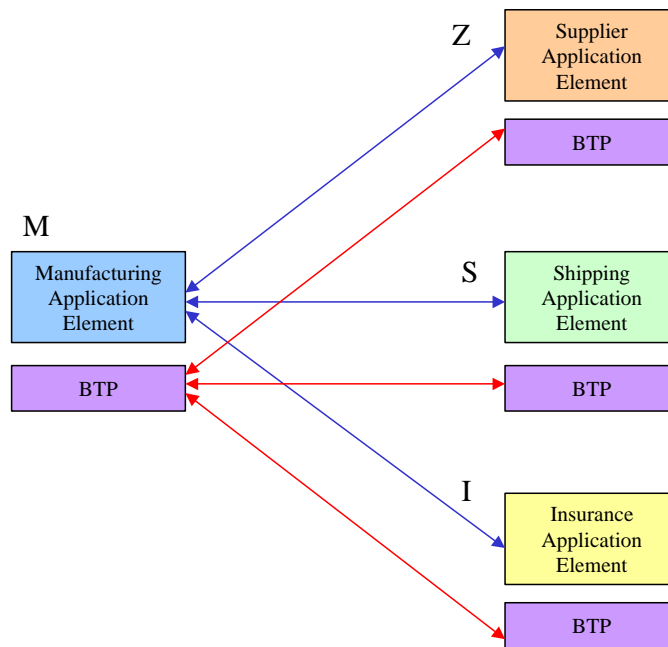
493

- *Manufacturer A* had ordered parts from a supplier and contacted shipper *M* about  
delivering the goods. Shipper *M* was busy and agreed to the contract but only for a  
scheduled delivery the day after the parts were needed. By the time this was  
addressed it was too late to schedule alternate shipping.
- There were communications problems with supplier *Z* that resulted in an order not  
being confirmed. The shipper arrived to pick up the order and supplier *Z* knew  
nothing about it.
- Goods have been shipped without insurance when company policy dictated that  
insurance was required.

494  
495  
496  
497  
498  
499  
500  
501  
502  
503  
504  
505  
506  
507  
508  
509  
510

These problems occur because of the unreliable nature of the Internet and the lack of visibility a company has into the workings and state of an outside organization. By using BTP in support of this supply application, these problems can be ameliorated.

BTP is a protocol, that is, a set of specific messages that get exchanged between computer systems supporting an application, with rules about the meaning and use of the messages. The computer systems will also exchange application-specific messages. Thus, within the example, the Manufacturer's system and the Supplier's system (say), will exchange messages detailing what the goods are, how many, what price and will also exchange BTP messages. The parts of the application in both systems that handle these different sets of messages can be distinguished, as in [Figure 1](#). In each BTP-using party there is an **application element** and a **BTP element**. The application elements exchange the order information and cause the associated business functions to be performed. The BTP elements, which send and receive the BTP messages, perform specific roles in the protocol. These BTP elements assist the application in getting the work of the application done. The application element, as understood by this model, may include supporting infrastructure elements, such as containers or interceptors, as well as application-specific code.



511  
512  
513  
514  
515  
516  
517  
518  
519  
520

Figure 1 – Manufacturer Example

### Business transactions

A **Business Transaction** can be defined as a consistent change in the state of a business relationship between two or more **parties**. A business relationship is any distributed state held by the parties which is subject to contractual constraints agreed by those parties. For example, an master purchasing agreement, which permits the placing of orders for components by known buying organizations allows a buyer and a seller to create and

521 subsequently exchange meaningful information about the creation and processing of an order.  
522 Such agreements (and the consequent specification of shared or canonical data formats and of  
523 the messages that carry those formats, and their permitted sequences, all of which are needed  
524 for an automated implementation of an agreement) stem from business negotiations and are  
525 specific to a particular trading or information exchange community (group of potential  
526 parties). This definition of a business relationship is deliberately silent on the nature of the  
527 “business” transacted between the parties: it might be trading for profit, verification of  
528 authorizations for expenditure or loans, consistent publication (replication) of government  
529 ordinances to multiple sites, or any other computerized interaction where the parties require  
530 high confidence of consistent delivery or processing of data. In each party or site where  
531 business relationship state resides an application system must exist which can maintain that  
532 state and communicate it as needed to other parties. The Business Transaction Protocol (BTP)  
533 assists the application systems of the various parties to bring about consistent and coordinated  
534 changes in the relationship as viewed from each party. BTP assumes that for a given business  
535 transaction, state changes occur, or are desired, in computer systems controlled by some set  
536 of parties, and that these changes are related in some application-defined manner. BTP  
537 assumes that the parties involved in a business transaction have distinct and autonomous  
538 application systems, which do not require knowledge of each others’ implementation or  
539 internal state representations in volatile or persistent storage. Access to such loosely coupled  
540 application systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.

541  
542 Thus the state changes that BTP is concerned with are only those affecting the immediate  
543 business relationship. Although these externally visible changes will typically correspond to  
544 internal state changes of the parties, use of BTP does not itself imply any constraints or  
545 requirements on the internal state.<sup>1</sup>

## 546 External Effects

547  
548 BTP coordinates the state changes caused by the exchange of application messages. These  
549 state changes are part of the contract between BTP-using parties. In the manufacturing  
550 example, an interaction between the manufacturer and the supplier might involve the supplier  
551 receiving the order (an application message), checking to ensure that it had enough product  
552 on hand, reserving the product in the manufacturer’s name and replying. When the  
553 manufacturer agrees to the purchase (assuming the shipping and insurance are also reserved),  
554 BTP messages are sent to confirm the purchase. In this case, the supplier is offering a **BTP-**  
555 **enabled service** – the application element and its supporting BTP elements together offer this  
556 service.

557  
558 In general, to be able to satisfy such contracts a BTP-enabled **service** must support in some  
559 manner provisional or tentative state changes (the transaction’s **provisional effect**) and  
560 completion either through confirmation (**final effect**) or cancellation (**counter-effect**). The  
561 meaning of provisional, final, and counter-effect are specific to the application and to the  
562 implementation of the application. In the example, the reservation of the order is the  
563 provisional effect, the completion of the purchase is the final effect.

---

<sup>1</sup> Although a Business Transaction is defined as concerning a business relationship, the facilities of BTP make it suitable for other environments where loosely coupled systems require coordination and consistency.



565 Some of the implementation approaches are shown in [Table 1](#)~~Table-1~~. From the perspective  
 566 of BTP and the initiator application, all these are considered equivalent. Outside of BTP the  
 567 underlying business relationship (or contract) between the parties can constrain the degree to  
 568 which the effects are visible.  
 569

570 **Table 1 Some alternatives for provisional, final and counter effects**

provisional effect	final effect	counter effect	Comment
Store intended changes without performing them	Perform the changes	Delete the stored changes, unperformed	Provisional effect may include checking for validity
Perform the changes, making them visible; store information to undo the changes	Delete undo information	Perform undo action	One form of compensation approach
Store original state, prevent outside access, perform changes	Allow access	Restore original state; allow access	a typical database approach

571  
 572 These alternatives are not the only ones – they can be combined or varied. The visible state  
 573 of the application information prior to confirmation or cancellation may be different from  
 574 both the original state and the final state.  
 575

576 Especially in the compensation approach, if the changes are cancelled, the counter-effect may  
 577 be a precise inversion or removal of provisional changes, or it may be the processing of  
 578 operations that in some way compensate for, make good, alleviate or supplement their effect.  
 579 There may be side-effects of various kinds from a counter-effected operation – such as  
 580 levying of cancellation charges or the record of the operation may be visible, but marked as  
 581 cancelled. The possibility of these side-effects is considered to be part of the overarching  
 582 contract.  
 583

### 584 **Two-phase outcome**

585  
 586 The BTP protocol coordinates the transitions into and out of the event states described above  
 587 by sending messages between the transaction parties. This involves a two-phase exchange.  
 588 First the application elements exchange messages that determine the characteristics and cause  
 589 the performance of the provisional effect; then a separate message, to the BTP element,  
 590 asking for the performance of the final or the counter effect.  
 591

592 In general, the application elements in the systems involved having first communicated the  
 593 application messages, each system that has to make changes in its own state:

- 594
- determines whether it is able achieve its provisional effect and then ensure it
- 595 will be able either to cancel (counter-effect) its operation or to confirm (give
- 596 final effect to) its operation, whichever is subsequently instructed, and
- 597
- reports its ability to confirm-or-cancel (its preparedness) to a central
- 598 coordinating entity.

599

600 And, after receiving these reports, the coordinating entity:

- 601
- determines which of the systems should be instructed to confirm and which
- 602 should be instructed to cancel
- 603
- informs each system whether it should confirm or cancel (the “outcome”).by
- 604 sending a message to its BTP element

605

606 When there is more than one system that has to make changes such a two-phase exchange

607 mediated by a coordinator is required to achieve a consistent outcome for a set of operations.

608 The two-phases of the BTP protocol ensure that either the entire attempted transaction is

609 abandoned or a consistent set of participants is confirmed.

610

## 611 **Actors and roles**

612

613 BTP centres on the bilateral relationship between the computer systems of the coordinating

614 entity and those of one of the parties in the overall business transaction. For each bilateral

615 relationship in a business transaction, a software agent within the coordinating entity’s

616 systems plays the BTP role of Superior and a software agent within the systems of the party

617 play the BTP role of Inferior. The concept “**role**” refers strictly to the participation in a

618 particular relationship in a particular business transaction. The software agent performing a

619 role is termed an **Actor**. An Actor is distinguished from other Actors by being distinguishably

620 addressable. The same Actor may perform multiple roles in the same business transaction

621 (including the case where a Superior is also an Inferior), and may also perform the same or

622 different roles in multiple business transactions, either concurrently or consecutively.

623

## 624 **Superior:Inferior relationship**

625

626 A basic case of a single Superior:Inferior relationship, including the association with

627 application elements, is illustrated in [Figure 2](#)~~Figure 2~~. In many cases, including the

628 manufacturer supply example, the application element associated with the superior will

629 directly initiate the application exchanges –as does the manufacturer’s application client to

630 the supplier’s server, for example – but this is not invariably the case. It is possible that the

631 first direct communication between the application elements is from one associated with an

632 inferior to the one associated with the superior – for example, with an application that

633 requested quotes by advertising the identity and location of the Superior along with invitation

634 to quote; incoming quotes would be the first direct application message exchanged. In all

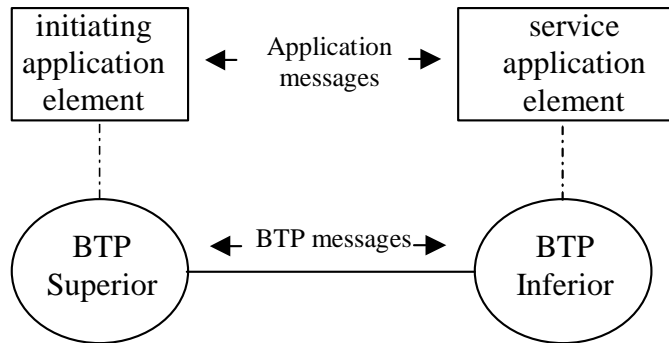
635 cases the topmost application element in a tree or subtree will be aware of the business

636 transaction first. How the identity of the transaction and the address of the BTP Superior are

637 communicated to the secondary application element is a matter for the application protocol

638  
639  
640

and not strictly part of BTP, although it will commonly be done by associating a BTP CONTEXT message with application messages..



641  
642

**Figure 2 Basic Superior:Inferior relationship for BTP**

643

644

645

646

647

648

649

650

651

652

653

654

An Inferior is associated with some set of application activities that create effects within the party, for a given business transaction. As stated above, commonly, though not invariably, this application activity within the party will be a result of some operation invocations from elsewhere (shown as the “initiating application element” in [Figure 2](#) [Figure-2](#)), associated with the Superior to an application element associated with the Inferior (shown as “Service application element”). This second application element determines what activities the Inferior is responsible for, and then the Inferior is responsible for reporting to the Superior whether the associated operations’ provisional effect can be confirmed/cancelled – this is called “becoming prepared”, because the Inferior has to remain prepared to receive whichever order eventually arrives (subject to various exceptions and exclusions, detailed below).

### Business transaction trees

655

656

657

658

659

660

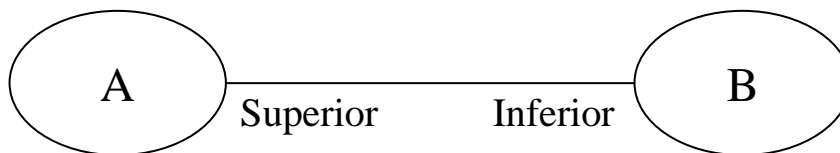
661

662

663

664

There are many patterns in which the service provider participants involved in a business transaction may be arranged in respect of the two-phase exchange and the determination of which are eventually confirmed. The simplest is shown in [Figure 3](#) [Figure-3](#) involving only two parties – one (B) making itself subject to the decision of confirm-or-cancel made by the other (A). This basic bilateral relationship, in which one side makes itself inferior to the other, is the building block used in all business transaction patterns. In this simplest case, the “coordination” by the superior, A, is just that A can be sure whether the operations at the inferior, B were eventually cancelled or confirmed.



665

666

**Figure 3 Simple two-party business transaction**

667

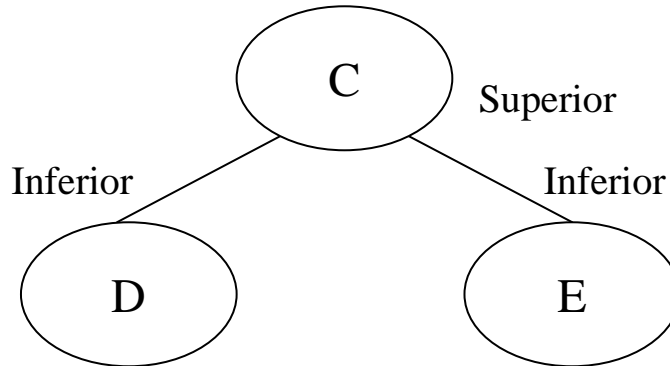
668

669

In the next simplest case, as in figure [Figure 4](#) [Figure-4](#), a bilateral, Superior:Inferior relationship appears twice, with two Inferiors, D and E, both making themselves inferior to a

670  
671  
672  
673  
674

single Superior, C. From the perspective of either D or E, they are in the same position as B in the previous case –they are unaware of and unaffected (directly) by each other. It is only within C that there is any linkage between the confirm-or-cancel outcomes that apply to D and E.

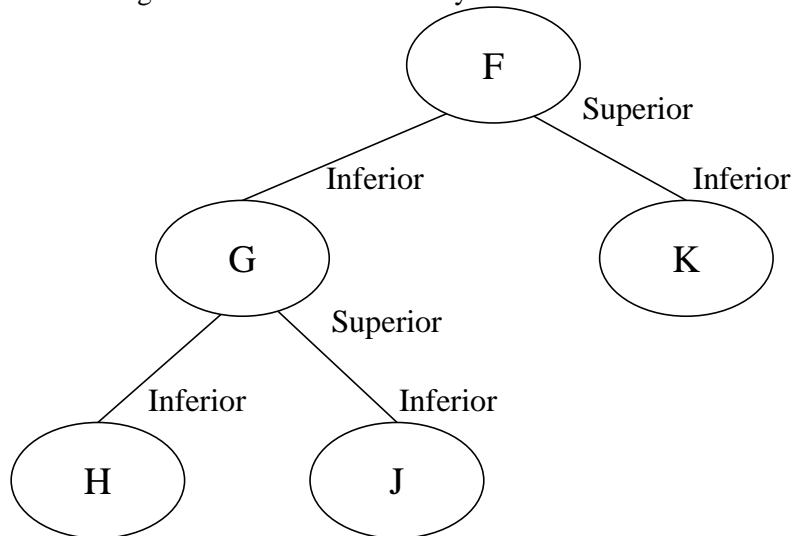


675  
676

**Figure 4 Business transaction with two inferiors**

677  
678  
679  
680  
681  
682  
683  
684

The same Superior:Inferior relationship is used in business transaction trees that are both “wider” – with more Inferiors reporting their preparedness to be confirm-or-canceled to a single Superior – and “deeper”. In a “deeper” tree, as in figure [Figure 5](#), an entity (G) that is Superior to one or more Inferiors (H, J), is itself Inferior to another entity (F) – it is said to be **interposed** or is an **Intermediate** (either term can be used). In this case, G will collect the information on preparedness of its Inferiors before passing on its own report to its Superior, F, and awaiting the outcome as advised by F.



685  
686

**Figure 5 Business transaction with an Intermediate (interposition)**

687  
688  
689

A business transaction tree, made up of these bilateral Superior:Inferior relationships can, in theory, be arbitrarily “wide” or “deep” – there are no fixed limits to how many Inferiors a

690 single Superior can have, or how many levels of intermediates there are between the top-most  
691 Superior (that is Inferior to none) and the bottom-most leaf Inferior. The actual creation of the  
692 tree depends on the behaviour and requirements of the application. Given the (potentially)  
693 inter-organisational nature of business transactions, there may be no overall design or control  
694 of the structure of the tree.

695  
696 Each Inferior has only one Superior. However, a single Superior may (and commonly does)  
697 have multiple relationships with Inferiors, and may have such relationships with multiple  
698 Inferiors within each party to the transaction, and with Inferiors within multiple parties.

### 700 **Atoms and Cohesions**

701 As described in the previous section, the Superior receives reports from its Inferiors as to  
702 whether they are prepared. It gathers these reports in order to ascertain which Inferiors should  
703 be cancelled and which confirmed - those that cannot prepare will have already cancelled  
704 themselves. This determined, directly or indirectly, by the application element responsible of  
705 the creation and control of the Superior, which determines the nature of the Superior. There  
706 are two dimensions of variation in the Superior: is it an Inferior to another Superior; does it  
707 treat its own Inferiors atomically or cohesively. The distinction between atomic and cohesive  
708 behaviour is whether the Superior will choose or allow some Inferiors to cancel while others  
709 confirm – this is not allowed for atomic behaviour, in which all must confirm or all must  
710 cancel, but is for cohesive.

711  
712 The possible cases for a Superior, given these two dimensions of variation, are:  
713

- 714 a) the application element initiated the business transaction (causing the creation of  
715 the Superior), and instructed that all Inferiors of the Superior should confirm or  
716 all should cancel; the Superior is an **Atom Coordinator**;
- 717 b) the application element initiated the business transaction, but deferred the choice  
718 of which Inferiors should confirm until later, allowing it (the application element)  
719 to choose some subset to be confirmed, others to cancel; the Superior is a  
720 **Cohesion Composer**;
- 721 c) the application element was itself involved in an existing business transaction,  
722 and the Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this application  
723 element instructed that all Inferiors of this Superior should confirm, but only if  
724 confirmation is instructed from above or all should cancel; the Superior is an  
725 (atomic) **Sub-coordinator**;
- 726 d) the application element was itself involved in an existing business transaction,  
727 and the Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this application  
728 element deferred the choice of which Inferiors should be candidates to confirm  
729 until later, allowing it (the application element) to choose some subset to be  
730 confirmed, given that confirmation is instructed from above, others to cancel; the  
731 Superior is a (cohesive) **Sub-composer**.

732  
733 In the atomic case, the two-phase outcome exchange means a Superior acting as an atomic  
734 Coordinator or sub-coordinator will treat any Inferior which cannot prepare to cancel/confirm  
735 as having veto power, causing the Superior to instruct all its Inferiors to cancel. A business

736 transaction whose topmost Superior is atomic is an Atomic Business Transaction, or Atom –  
737 the superior is the Atom Coordinator.

738  
739 In the cohesion case, with the Superior acting as a cohesive Composer or Sub-Composer, the  
740 controlling application element will determine the implications of an Inferior’s failure to be  
741 prepared to confirm-or-cancel; the application element may cancel some or all other Inferiors,  
742 do other application work, which may involve new Inferiors or may just accept the  
743 cancellation of that one Inferior and carry on. A business transaction whose topmost Superior  
744 is cohesive is a Cohesive Business Transaction, or Cohesion – the Superior is the Cohesion  
745 Composer.

746  
747 For a cohesion, the set of Inferiors that eventually confirm is called the **confirm-set**. The term  
748 is also used to mean the set of Inferiors that have been chosen to (potentially) confirm before  
749 the final outcome is decided – if the cohesion is eventually cancelled, then confirm-set  
750 cancels. (See section “Evolution of confirm-set”). The confirm-set of an Atom is all of the  
751 Inferiors.

752  
753 If the Superior is itself an Inferior, its own action of becoming prepared, and reporting this to  
754 its own Superior will depend on the receipt of prepared reports from its Inferiors. If it is  
755 atomic (i.e. is a sub-coordinator), it will only become prepared if all Inferiors reported  
756 preparedness to it; if it is cohesive (i.e. is a sub-composer), the controlling application  
757 element will determine whether the set of Inferiors that have reported as prepared is  
758 sufficient.

759  
760 If the Superior is not an Inferior, the determination of when, if and, for a Cohesion, what it  
761 should confirm depends on the controlling application. This “top-most” Superior has a  
762 different relationship to the controlling application to that of an Inferior to its Superior: an  
763 Inferior reports that it is prepared to the Superior, which instructs it whether to cancel or to  
764 confirm; the top-most Superior is asked by the application element to attempt to confirm, but,  
765 dependent on the preparedness of its Inferiors, the top-most Superior makes the final  
766 decision. Consequently the top-most Superior is termed the **Decider**; the application element  
767 that asks it to confirm is the **Terminator**.

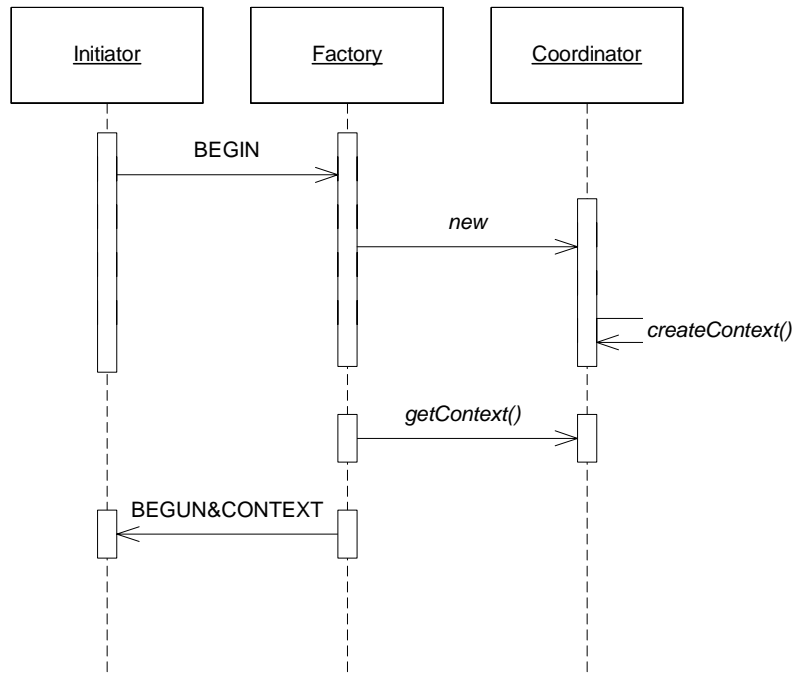
## 768 769 **Participants, Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers**

770  
771 An Inferior may directly be responsible for applying the confirm-or-cancel decision to some  
772 application effects, or may in turn be a BTP Superior to which others will enrol. If it only  
773 handles application effects it is called a **Participant**, in the latter case it is called a **Sub-**  
774 **coordinator** or a **Sub-composer**, depending on whether it is atomic or cohesive with respect  
775 to its own future Inferiors. (If an Inferior is both responsible for application effects, and is a  
776 BTP Superior, it is not considered a Participant, according to the strict definitions, though  
777 informally it may be referred to as such.) The Superior is unaware, via the BTP exchanges,  
778 whether the Inferior is a Participant, Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer. This specification  
779 does not define messages or interfaces for the creation of Participants or for the application  
780 element to tell the Participant what the application effects are or how they are to be confirmed  
781 or cancelled as necessary. (Although out-of-scope for this specification, one or more APIs  
782 could be standardised.)

783  
784  
785  
786  
787  
788  
789  
790  
791

### Business transaction creation

This section describes in some detail how a BTP business transaction is created. The interaction diagram in [Figure 6](#) also shows this sequence. The messages shown in lower-case italics (between Factory and Coordinator) represent interactions that are not specified in BTP.



792  
793

**Figure 6 – Creation of a business transaction**

794 A business transaction is started at the initiative of an application element, which causes the  
795 creation of a Coordinator or Composer. Any Inferiors participating in this transaction will  
796 enrol with this Superior. BTP defines abstract messages (BEGIN, BEGUN) to request this  
797 but the equivalent function can also be achieved using proprietary means, especially if the  
798 Factory or Coordinator is an internal component of the initiating application. If the BTP  
799 messages are used, the application element performs the role of Initiator and sends BEGIN to  
800 a Factory. The BEGIN message identifies whether a Coordinator (for an atom) or a Composer  
801 (for a cohesion) is desired. The Factory, after the creation of the new Coordinator or  
802 Composer, replies with related BEGUN and CONTEXT messages. "Related" means they are  
803 sent together in a manner that has semantic significance; how this is represented is  
804 determined by the binding in use. The Coordinator's or Composer's creation is the  
805 establishment of a new instance of a BTP role. It may involve only the assignment of a new  
806 identifier within an existing Actor (which may also be performing the Factory role, for  
807 example). Alternatively a new Actor with a distinct address may be instantiated. These and  
808 other alternatives are implementation choices, and BTP ensures other Actors are unaffected  
809 by the choice made.

810  
811 The BEGUN message provides the addressing and identification information needed for a  
812 Terminator to access the new Coordinator or Composer as Decider; the application element  
813 performing the Initiator role may itself act as Terminator, or may pass this information to  
814 some other application element.  
815

816 Whether this interoperable BTP Initiator:Factory relationship or some other mechanism is  
817 used to initiate the business transaction, a CONTEXT is made available. This identifies the  
818 Coordinator or Composer as a Superior – containing both addressing information and the  
819 identification of the relevant state information. The CONTEXT is also marked as to whether  
820 or not this Superior will behave atomically with respect to its Inferiors (i.e. is it a Coordinator  
821 or Composer).  
822

### 823 **Business transaction propagation**

824 The propagation of the business transaction from one party to another, to establish the  
825 Superior:Inferior relationships involves the transmission of the CONTEXT. This is  
826 commonly in association with, or related to, one or more application messages between the  
827 parties. In a typical case, an application message is sent from the application element that  
828 performed the Initiator role (the “sending application” in [Figure 2](#)~~Figure-2~~) to some other  
829 element (the receiving application). The CONTEXT is sent with the application message in  
830 such a way that the application elements understand that work performed as a result of the  
831 application message is to be the subject of a confirm-or-cancel decision of the Superior.<sup>2</sup> The  
832 receiving application element causes the creation of an Inferior (which, as for the Superior  
833 may involve just assignment on a new identifier, or instantiation of a new Actor) and  
834 ensures the new Inferior is enrolled with the Superior identified in the received CONTEXT,  
835 using an ENROL message sent to the Superior using the address in that CONTEXT.  
836

837 [Figure 7](#)~~Figure-7~~ shows a sequence diagram of the propagation of a business transaction. It is  
838 assumed the transaction has already been created, and thus the application element and  
839 Coordinator exist. The diagram shows the Enroller as a distinct role, with non-standardised  
840 interactions between the application element, the Enroller and the new Inferior. The Enroller  
841 role may in fact be performed by the application element, by the Inferior or by a distinct  
842 entity. At least the Superior-identifier and Superior-address from the CONTEXT has to be  
843 passed the Enroller and to the Inferior so they can communicate with the Coordinator (whose  
844 identifier and address these are).

---

<sup>2</sup> The relationship between the application activity and BTP is subtle, and summarised in this sentence.



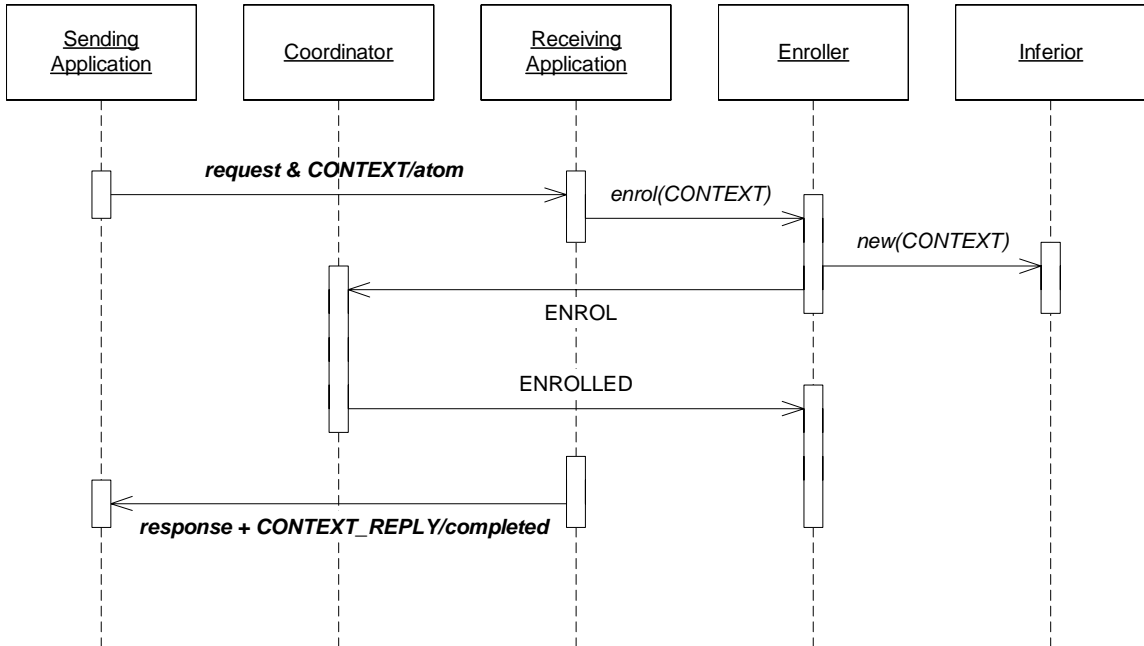
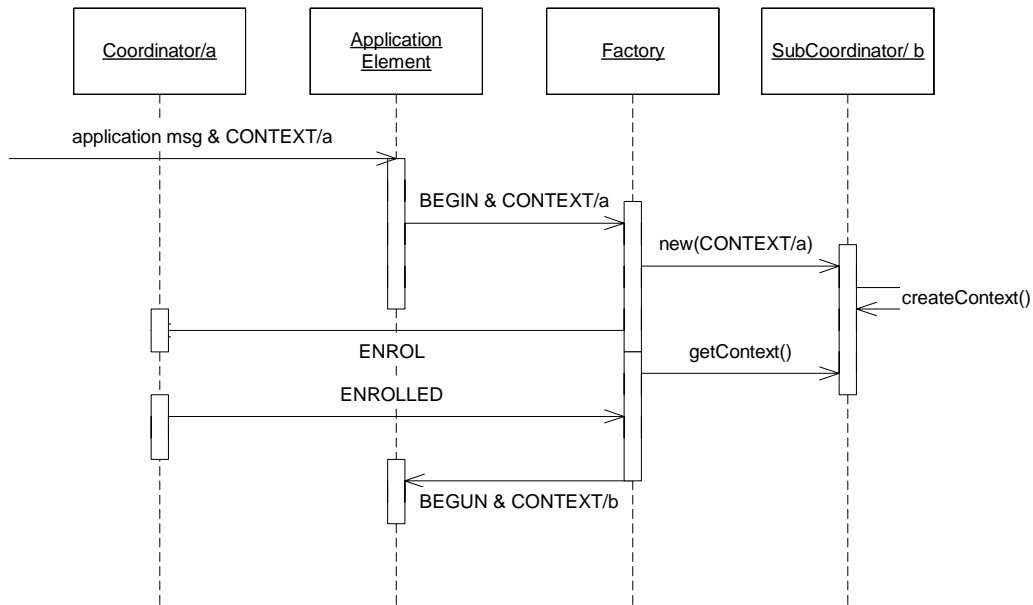


Figure 7 Sequence diagram of propagation

845  
846  
847  
848  
849  
850  
851  
852  
853  
854  
855  
856  
857  
858  
859  
860  
861  
862  
863  
864  
865  
866  
867  
868  
869

### Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers)

If the new Inferior is to be a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, this can be created using a non-standard mechanism or the Initiator:Factory relationship can be used again. [Figure 8](#) shows a sequence diagram, using the latter mechanism. The application element, having received an application message and a CONTEXT from some Superior – shown as a Coordinator/a in the diagram - wants to create the new Inferior and acting in the Initiator role, issues BEGIN to the Factory, but the CONTEXT for the original Superior (Coordinator/a) is “related” to the BEGIN. The Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer as an Inferior of the Superior identified by the received CONTEXT. The reply from the Factory is a related BEGUN and CONTEXT – this being the CONTEXT for the new Sub-coordinator (‘b’) or Sub-composer as a Superior. The Sub-coordinator/Sub-composer is not a Decider, as its decision is subordinated to the outcome received from the Superior. For a Sub-coordinator, further control by the application is primarily a matter of relating the new CONTEXT to appropriate application activity. For a Sub-composer there is in addition a requirement for the application to determine which of the Inferiors of the Sub-composer must have reported they are prepared before the Sub-composer can report that it is itself prepared to its own Superior, and then which of these Inferiors are to be ordered to confirm if the Sub-composer is ordered to confirm. This specification does not provide an interface or interoperable message to control this; like the relationship between application element and Participant, it is left to the implementation or independent standardisation.



870

871

**Figure 8 – Creation of a Sub-coordinator**

872

873

874

875

876

877

878

879

880

881

882

883

884

885

886

The creation of a new Inferior and establishment of a Superior:Inferior relationship does not always imply that the BTP Actors are under the control of different business parties or application elements. In particular, an application element may begin a Cohesion, then create and enrol (atomic) Sub-coordinators as Inferiors of the Composer, then associate a different Sub-coordinator's CONTEXT with each of several aspects of the application work, transmitting that CONTEXT with the application messages for that aspect to the other parties in the business transaction. Those parties can then create Participants (or other Inferiors) that are enrolled with the appropriate Sub-coordinator. Later, the application element (as Terminator, or its equivalent) can choose which of the Cohesion Composers' Inferiors to cancel and which to confirm. By interposing its own atomic Sub-coordinator the initiating application element can indicate to the other parties that some associated set of application work will be confirmed or cancelled as a unit. This may allow the receiving parties to share information between application operations and to make one Participant responsible for applying the outcome to several operations.

887 **"Checking" and context-reply**

888

889

890

891

892

893

894

895

896

897

898

In BTP, enrolment is at the initiative of an application element that has received or has access to the CONTEXT which creates an Inferior (BTP uses a "pull" paradigm for enrolment). An application element in possession of a CONTEXT can choose, perhaps constrained by an overarching business and application understanding, whether and how many Inferiors to create and enrol. Consequently, in general, an application element which propagates a CONTEXT to another (via whatever mechanisms it choose), cannot be sure how many Inferiors will be enrolled as a result. Without further controls, there would be a possibility that an application element receiving a CONTEXT might attempt to enrol an Inferior with a Superior after the Superior had been asked to confirm, or even had completed confirmation. In such a case application work that should have been part of a confirmed atomic business

899 transaction could be cancelled, violating the atomicity in a manner that will not be apparent to  
900 the application.

901  
902 To avoid this, whenever a CONTEXT is transmitted to another party by or on behalf of the  
903 application, the transmission of the CONTEXT itself can be replied to with a  
904 CONTEXT\_REPLY message – this is required for an Atom, allowed for a Cohesion. An  
905 application element that has received a BTP CONTEXT is able, because it knows the  
906 Superior’s identification and address in the CONTEXT, to enrol Inferiors ([Figure 9](#)~~Figure-9~~).<sup>3</sup>  
907 Replying with CONTEXT\_REPLY means that the sender (the earlier receiver of a  
908 CONTEXT) will not enrol any more Inferiors. Consequently the sender of a CONTEXT can  
909 keep track of whether there are any outstanding (un-replied to) CONTEXTs that could be  
910 used for an enrolment and can avoid requesting or permitting confirmation until everything is  
911 safe. This check is required for an Atom, but is not always essential when the CONTEXT is  
912 for a Cohesion. For a Cohesion, it is a matter for the controlling application whether all  
913 would-be Inferiors must be enrolled before a confirmation decision can be made; or whether  
914 it is acceptable to proceed to confirmation at some point in time with the already enrolled  
915 Inferiors (or a subset thereof), accepting the automatic cancellation of any late arrivals.

916  
917 CONTEXT\_REPLY can also indicate that attempted enrollments failed. This can occur if the  
918 Enroller is unable to contact the Superior, but it able to return a CONTEXT\_REPLY to  
919 where-ever the CONTEXT came from.

921 *Section explaining becoming prepared ?*

922 **Message sequence**

923 BTP messages are used in relationships between several pairs of roles. These particular pair-  
924 wise relationships can be categorised into:

- 925 • Outcome relationships : the Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP actors  
926 within the transaction tree) and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it
- 927 • Control relationships : the application:BTP actor relationships that create the nodes of  
928 the transaction tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).

929  
930 The outcome relationships and the messages used in them an essential part of BTP. For the  
931 control relationships, it would be possible to achieve the same general function using non-  
932 standardised messages or API mechanisms. There are other distinguishable relationships  
933 between roles defined by BTP that are not standardised in this specification.

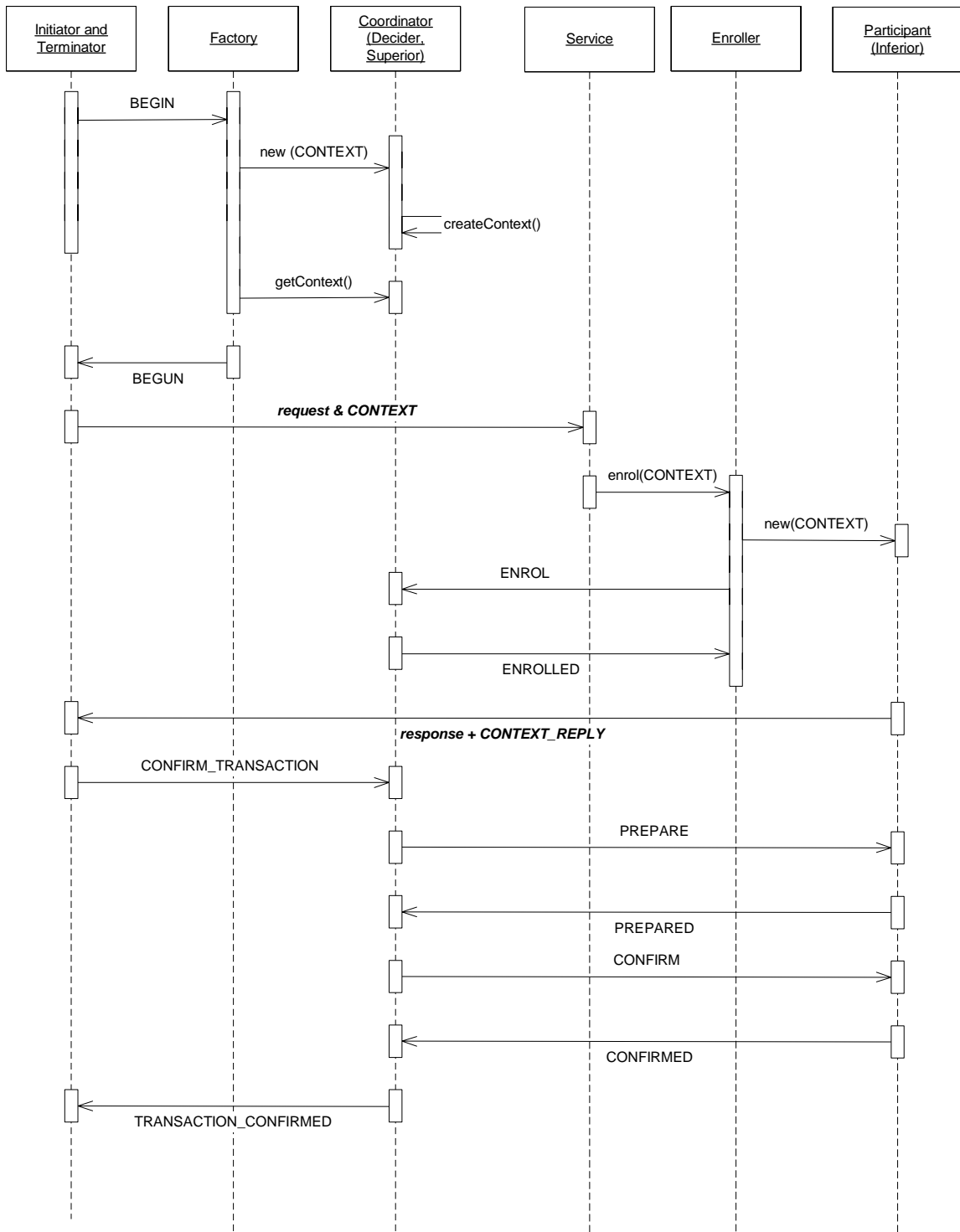
934  
935 [Figure 9](#)~~Figure-9~~ shows the message exchange for the conventional progression of a simple  
936 transaction to confirmation with a single Superior:Inferior relationship, assuming the standard  
937 control relationship. Two application elements using a request/response application message  
938 exchange are involved – the first is represented as the Initiator and Terminator, the second as  
939 the Service and Enroller. The Decider/Superior is shown as a Coordinator, but with only one  
940 Inferior there would be no difference with a cohesion Composer. The Factory:Coordinator  
941 events are non-standardised, but represent interactions that must occur in some form. There  
942 are other interactions between the various application groups – Initiator-Terminator and

---

<sup>3</sup> The “application element” from the perspective of BTP may include infrastructure software such as containers or interceptors, as well the application-specific code itself.

943 Participant-Enroller-Service that are not shown – in particular the Service:Participant  
944 relationship.

945  
946 The message sequence is shown is the “conventional” sequence, with all messages explicitly  
947 present and sent separately. There are several variations and optimisations possible – these  
948 are discussed below.  
949



950  
951  
952

**Figure 9 A conventional message sequence for a simple transaction**

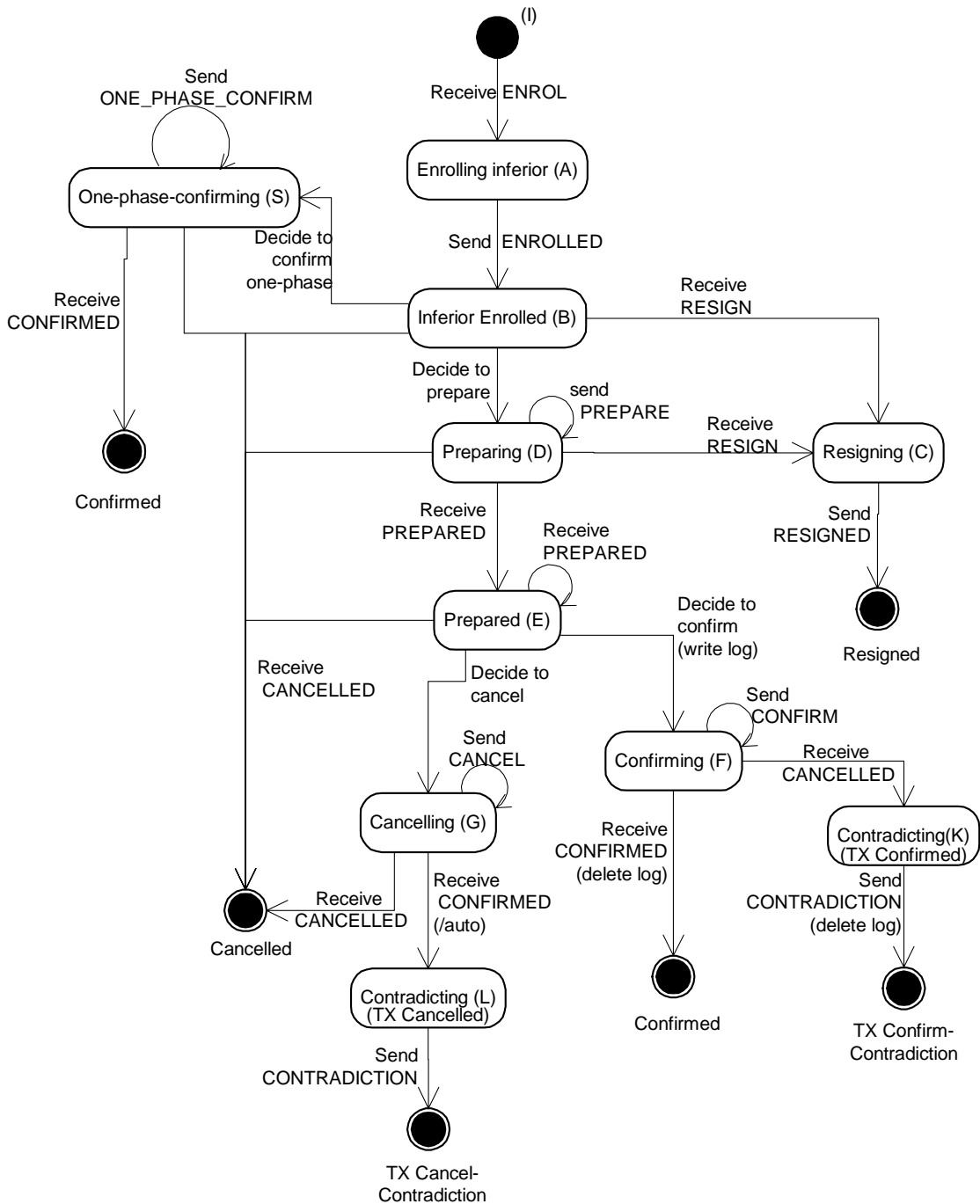
953 Note that CONTEXT has a “related” (&) relationship to BEGUN and to the application  
954 request (although in the latter case the meaning of this is defined by the application, not by  
955 BTP. The response + CONTEXT\_REPLY has no semantic significance, and could be sent  
956 separately; provided the CONTEXT\_REPLY is not sent until the ENROLLED has returned.

957  
958 The progression of a single instance of the central outcome (Superior:Inferior) relationship  
959 can also be presented as a set of state transitions. The normative part of the specification  
960 includes state tables for the Superior side of such a relationship and for the Inferior. Since a  
961 single Superior (Coordinator, Composer, Sub-coordinator, Sub-composer) can have multiple  
962 Inferiors, each Superior will have multiple instances of the “Superior state”. How these link  
963 together is discussed below in the section “Evolution of confirm-set”, but the state transitions  
964 for the individual Superior:Inferior relationships include “decision events” which constrain  
965 the behaviour of the business transaction tree node as a whole, and thus define the semantics  
966 of the BTP messages.

967  
968 The normative state tables distinguish some states that differ only in which messages can be  
969 received and thus allow for a level of error checking. The progress of the outcome  
970 relationship can be followed without dropping to such a detailed level, and the state diagrams  
971 shown here aggregate some of the states that are distinguished in the state tables. The single  
972 letters in parentheses in the diagrams correspond to the state names used in the tables. For  
973 simplicity, the state diagrams do not include the events leading to the sending of a HAZARD  
974 message – the detection and recording of a “problem” – meaning that the Inferior is unable to  
975 cleanly confirm or cleanly cancel the operations it is responsible for. As is specified in the  
976 state tables, such a problem can be detected in most states, and reported with a HAZARD  
977 message.

978  
979 It should be noted that, with some exceptions, the transmission of a message **from** a Superior  
980 or Inferior does not cause a state change at that side. State changes are normally caused either  
981 by the receipt of a message from the peer, or by a “decision event” – which may be an  
982 internal change, including a change in the persistent information for the transactions, or may  
983 be the receipt of a message on another relationship (e.g. as when a Sub-coordinator receives  
984 CANCEL from its Superior, which is a decision event as perceived on the relationships to its  
985 Inferiors). It would be normal for an implementation on entering a new state to send the  
986 message it can now send (there will be only one). It may repeat this message at any interval –  
987 in practice only if there is reason to believe (due to lower-layer errors, timeout or known  
988 recovery events) that messages may have got lost.

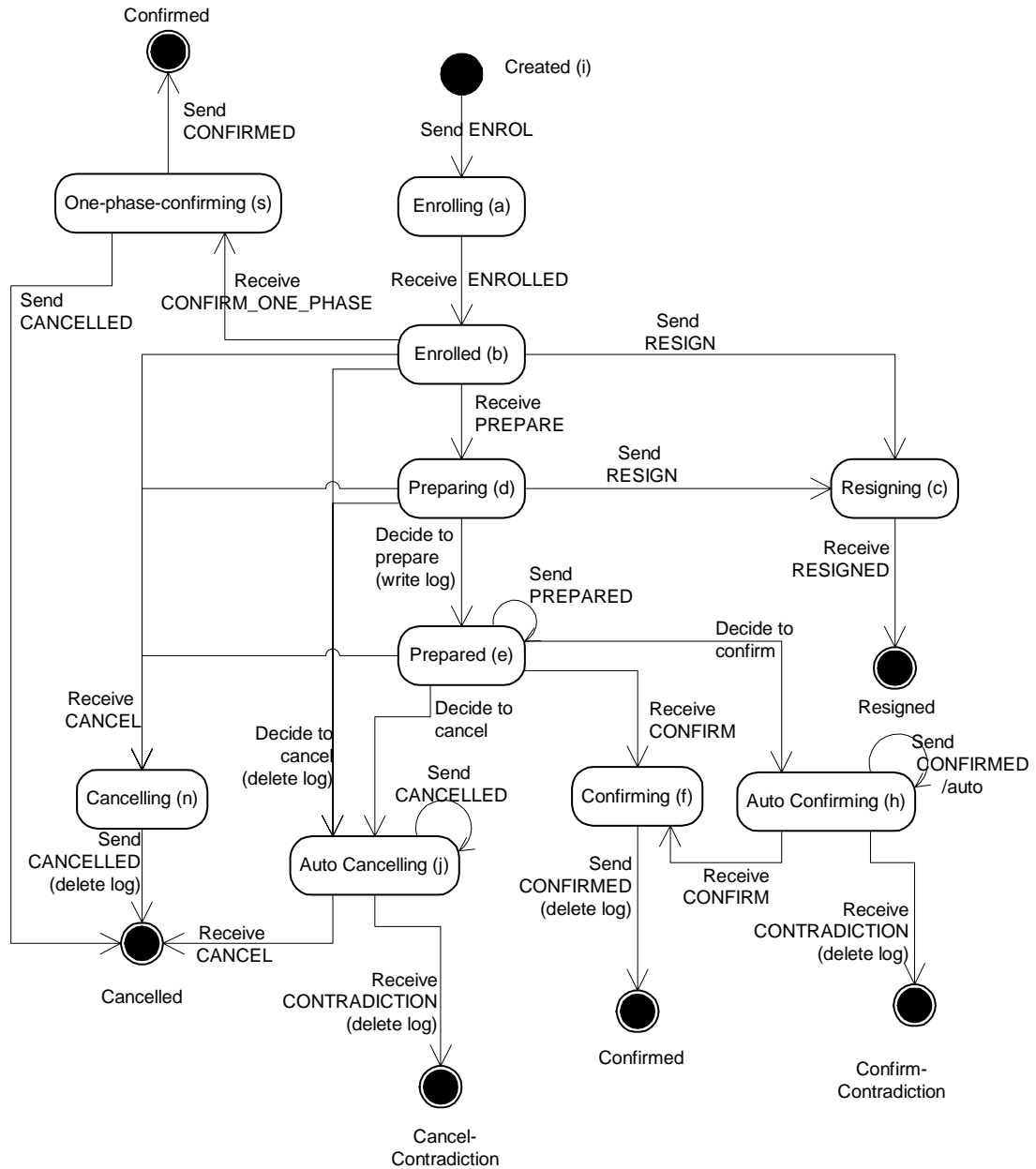
989



990

991

**Figure 10 State diagram for Superior side of a Superior:Inferior relationship**



992  
 993  
 994  
 995  
 996  
 997  
 998  
 999

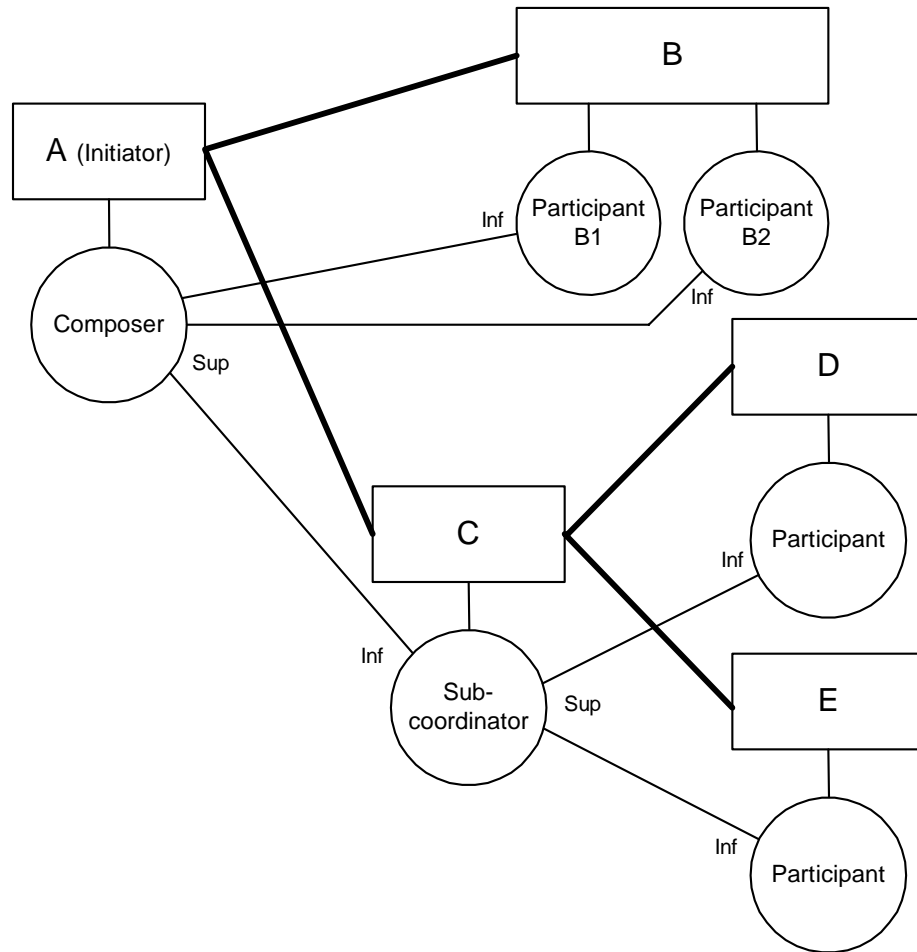
**Figure 11 State diagram for Inferior side of Superior:Inferior relationship**  
**Control of inferiors**

In the case as shown in [Figure 12](#), where the CONTEXT has been propagated from one application element (A) to others (B, C, and from C to D,E), the determination of whether to create and enrol Inferiors is, in general, up to the receiving application element – this is an aspect of the fundamental autonomy of the parties involved in a business transaction. This



1000  
1001  
1002

autonomy may be constrained in particular situations, by inter-party agreement or where the application elements are in fact under common control.



1003  
1004  
1005  
1006  
1007  
1008  
1009  
1010  
1011  
1012  
1013  
1014  
1015  
1016  
1017

**Figure 12 Transaction tree showing various application:Participant relationships**

The relationship between the application messages and either the propagated CONTEXT or the ENROL message(s) sent to the Superior is strictly part of the application protocol (or the application-with-BTP combination protocol). However defined, this allows the Superior-side application element to be aware of what application work will be confirmed or cancelled under the control of an Inferior. However, from the perspective of the Superior, and the application element controlling it, the Inferior is opaque – it is not in general possible for the Superior or its controlling application element to determine whether is a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator (i.e. has Inferiors of its own) or is a Participant, with no further BTP relationships. Thus, if the Inferior is a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator, the Superior has no visibility or control of its “grand-children” – the Inferiors of its Inferior (thus, in [Figure 12](#), the Composer at A is unaware of D and E)

1018 The opacity of an Inferior does not however apply to the control exercised by the  
1019 immediately controlling application element. An application element, acting as Terminator to  
1020 a Decider (i.e. to a Composer or Coordinator), can be aware of and distinguish the different  
1021 Inferiors enrolled with that Decider (i.e. Inferiors enrolled with the Decider in its role as  
1022 Superior). (E.g.in [Figure 12](#)~~Figure-12~~, application element A knows of the Inferiors at C, B1  
1023 and B2) This is especially the case for a Cohesion Composer, where the Terminator will be  
1024 able to control which of the enrolled Inferiors of the Composer are eventually confirmed –  
1025 more exactly, the application will have control of the confirm-set for the Cohesion. For an  
1026 Atom Coordinator, visibility of the Inferiors is useful but less important, since no selection  
1027 can be made among which will be in the confirm-set – for an Atom, all Inferiors are ipso  
1028 facto members of the confirm-set.

1029  
1030 For this control of the Inferiors to be useful, the Terminator application element will need to  
1031 be able to associate particular parts of the application work with each Inferior. This can be  
1032 achieved by various means. Taking the case of an application element controlling a Cohesion  
1033 Composer:

- 1034
- 1035 a) The application element can create an Atom Sub-coordinator as an immediate  
1036 Inferior of the Cohesion Composer and propagate the Sub-coordinator's CONTEXT  
1037 associate with application messages concerned with the particular part of the  
1038 application work; any Inferiors (however many there may be) enrolled with Sub-  
1039 coordinator can be assumed to be responsible for (some of) that part of the  
1040 application, and the Terminator application element can just deal with the immediate  
1041 Inferior of the Composer that it created.
  - 1042 b) The application element can propagate the Composer's own CONTEXT, and the  
1043 receiving application element can create its own Inferior which will be responsible  
1044 for some part of the application, and send ENROL to the Composer (as Superior).  
1045 Application messages concerned with that part of the application are associated with  
1046 the ENROL, and the Terminator application element can thus determine what the  
1047 Inferior is responsible for.

1048  
1049 In both cases, the means by which the application message and the BTP CONTEXT or  
1050 ENROL are associated is ultimately application-specific. At the abstract message level, BTP  
1051 defines the concept of transmitting "related" BTP and application messages – particular  
1052 bindings to carrier protocols can specify interoperable ways to represent this relatedness. BTP  
1053 messages, including CONTEXT and ENROL, can also carry "qualifiers" – extension fields  
1054 that are not core parts of BTP or are not defined by BTP at all. The standard qualifier  
1055 "inferior-name" or application-specific qualifiers can be used to associate application  
1056 information and the BTP message, allowing a Terminator to determine which parts of the  
1057 application work are associated with each Inferior.

1058  
1059 These considerations about control of the Inferiors of a Decider also apply to the control of  
1060 the Inferiors of a Sub-composer (and, again of less importance, a Sub-coordinator).  
1061

1062  
1063  
1064  
1065  
1066  
1067  
1068  
1069  
1070  
1071  
1072  
1073  
1074  
1075  
1076  
1077  
1078  
1079  
1080  
1081

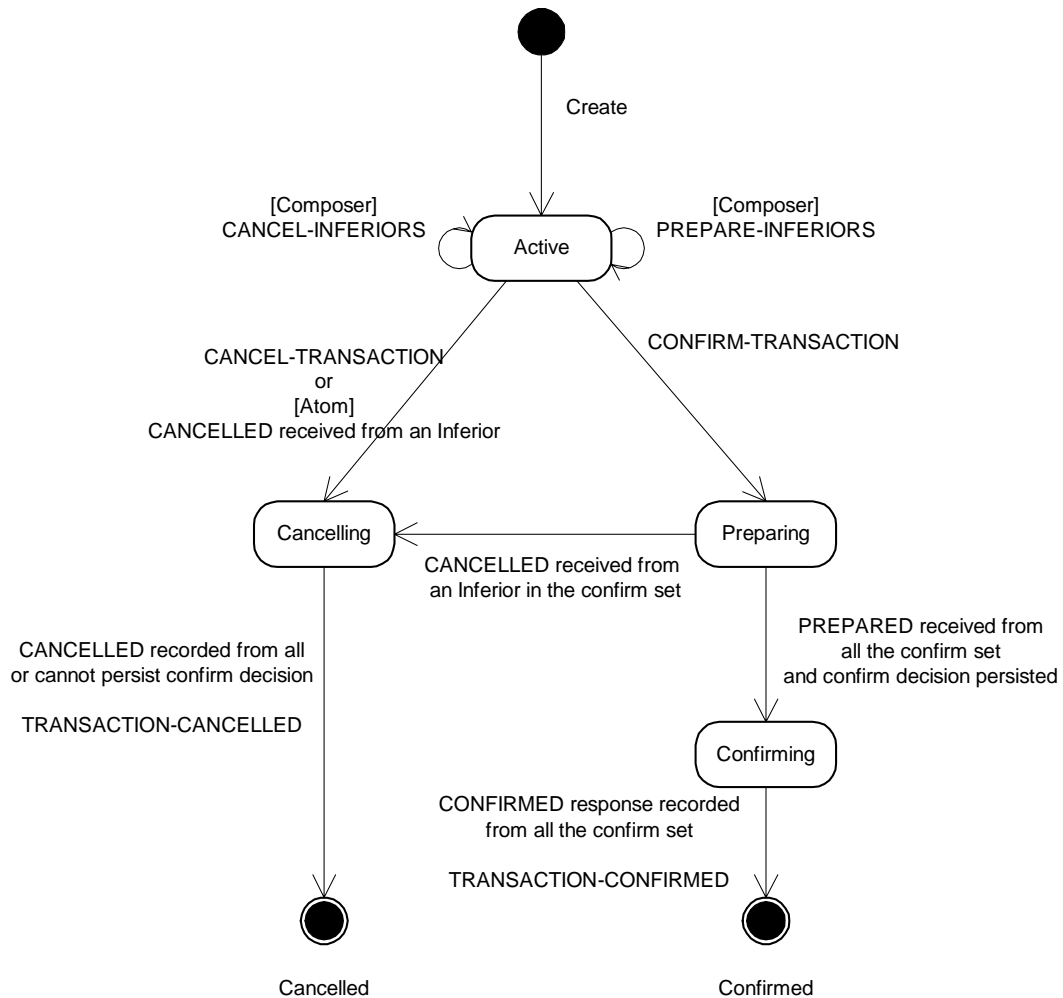
## Evolution of confirm-set

As mentioned above, the set of Inferiors of a Cohesion that will eventually confirm is called the Confirm-set. The determination of the Confirm-set is made by the controlling application, but is affected by events from the Inferiors themselves. If the standard control relationship is used, the control of the Cohesion Composer is expressed by the Terminator:Decider exchanges, and the progressive determination of the confirm-set (its evolution) is effectively the event sequence for the Terminator:Decider relationship.

An Atom also has a confirm-set, but this always includes all the Inferiors and so does not evolve in the same way as Cohesion's. With some exceptions, the Terminator:Decider relationship is the same for Atom Coordinators as for Cohesion Composers; this section deals with both, noting the exceptions.

The event sequence for a Composer or Coordinator is summarised in the state diagram in [Figure 13](#)~~Figure 13~~. The step-by-step description refers to "Composer", but should be read as referring to Coordinators as well, unless stated otherwise.

Initially, the Composer is created (by the Factory, using BEGIN with no related CONTEXT), and has no Inferiors. The Composer is now in the active state.



1082

1083

**Figure 13 State diagram for a Composer or Coordinator (i.e. Decider)**

1084

1085

While in the active state, the following may occur, in any order and with any repetition or overlapping:

1086

1087

- Inferiors are enrolled – ENROL is received by the Composer – adding to the set of Inferiors of the Composer.

1088

1089

1090

- Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior (see section Resignation below). The Inferior is immediately removed from the set of Inferiors, as if it had never been enrolled (a RESIGNED message may be sent to the Inferior, but it no longer “counts” in any of the Composer-wide considerations here).

1091

1092

1093

1094

1095

- CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior; there is no required immediate effect, but if this is a Coordinator the Atom will certainly cancel eventually (and an implementation may choose to initiate cancellation immediately).

1096

1097

1098

- 1099
- 1100
- 1101
- 1102
- 1103
- 1104
- 1105
- 1106
- 1107
- 1108
- 1109
- 1110
- 1111
- 1112
- 1113
- 1114
- 1115
- 1116
- 1117
- 1118
- 1119
- 1120
- 1121
- 1122
- 1123
- 1124
- 1125
- PREPARED may be received; there is no immediate effect
  - The Terminator may issue PREPARE\_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider) for some subset of the Inferiors; PREPARE is sent to each and any of the Inferiors in the subset, excluding any from RESIGN, CANCELLED or PREPARED has been received; the sending of PREPARE will induce the Inferiors to reply with PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN; when replies have been received from all, the Composer (as Decider) replies to the Terminator with INFERIOR\_STATUSES, reporting the replies received (which may in fact have been received before the PREPARE\_INFERIORS). PREPARE\_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom Coordinators.
  - The Terminator may issue CANCEL\_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider) for some subset of the Inferiors; CANCEL is sent to each and any of the Inferiors in the subset, excluding any from RESIGN or CANCELLED has been received; the sending of CANCEL will normally induce the Inferiors to reply with CANCELLED – there are some exception cases; when replies have been received from all, the Composer (as Decider) replies to the Terminator with INFERIOR\_STATUSES, reporting the replies received. CANCEL\_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom Coordinators. CANCEL\_INFERIORS may be issued for an Inferior regardless of whether PREPARED has been received from it.
  - The Terminator may issue REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES to the Composer (as Decider) for all or some subset of the Inferiors; the Composer immediately replies with INFERIOR\_STATUSES, reporting the current state of the Inferiors as known to the Superior.

1126 Eventually, the Terminator issues one of the completion messages –

1127 CANCEL\_TRANSACTION or CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION. These messages have a flag

1128 that determines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of contradictory and heuristic

1129 decisions or hazards within the transaction – this affects when the reply from the Composer

1130 (as Decider) is sent to the Terminator. (See section “Autonomous cancel, autonomous

1131 confirm and contradictions” for details on contradictory and heuristic cases).

1132

1133 If the message is CANCEL\_TRANSACTION, CANCEL is sent to all Inferiors that it has not

1134 already been sent to, and from which neither RESIGN or CANCELLED have been received.

1135 If the Terminator indicates it does not want to be informed of contradictions, the Composer

1136 will immediately reply with TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED. Otherwise, if and when

1137 CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from all Inferiors, the Composer replies to the

1138 Terminator with TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED; but if HAZARD or CONFIRMED is

1139 received from any Inferior, the reply is INFERIOR\_STATUSES, identifying which

1140 Inferior(s) had problems.

1141

1142 If the completion message is CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION, the inferiors-list parameter of the

1143 message defines the confirm-set. If the parameter is absent (which it must be for an atom

1144 Coordinator), then all Inferiors (excluding only those that have resigned) are the confirm-set;

1145 otherwise the confirm-set is only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (less

1146 any from which RESIGN has been received). The processing to arrive at the confirm decision  
1147 is:

- 1148 • If at the point of receiving CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION or at any point before  
1149 making the confirm decision (see below), CANCELLED is received, then the  
1150 transaction is cancelled and processing continues as if CANCEL\_TRANSACTION  
1151 had been received.
- 1152 • If there any Inferiors **not** in the confirm-set from which neither CANCELLED or  
1153 RESIGN has been received, CANCEL is sent to them (this cannot happen for Atom  
1154 Coordinators)
- 1155 • If initially or later, there is exactly one Inferior in the confirm-set, and either  
1156 PREPARE has not been sent to it, or PREPARED has been received from it, then at  
1157 implementation or configuration option, CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE can be sent to  
1158 that Inferior. This delegates the confirm decision to the Inferior
- 1159 • If at any point, RESIGN is received from an Inferior, it is immediately removed from  
1160 the confirm-set (this may trigger the decision making)
- 1161 • If there are any Inferiors in the confirm-set from which none of PREPARED,  
1162 CANCELLED has been received and to which PREPARE has not yet been sent,  
1163 PREPARE is sent to that Inferior
- 1164 • If initially or later, PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the confirm-  
1165 set, the Composer *makes the confirm decision*; it persists (or attempts to persist)  
1166 information identifying the Inferiors in the confirm-set; if this fails, the transaction is  
1167 cancelled and processing continues as if CANCEL\_TRANSACTION had been  
1168 received; if the information is persisted, the confirm decision has been made.  
1169

1170 When the confirm decision is made, CONFIRM is sent to all the Inferiors in the confirm-set.  
1171 And, if on the CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION the Terminator indicated it did not wish to be  
1172 informed of contradictions, TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED is sent to the Terminator.  
1173 If the Terminator indicated it wanted to be informed of contradictions, the Composer replies  
1174 to it with TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED if and when CONFIRMED has been received  
1175 from all the Inferiors in the confirm-set and CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received  
1176 from any other Inferiors. If other replies (CANCELLED from a confirm-set Inferior,  
1177 CONFIRMED from other Inferiors, HAZARD from any) are received, the reply to the  
1178 Terminator is INFERIOR\_STATUSES, identifying which Inferior(s) had problems.  
1179

### 1180 **Confirm-set of intermediates**

1181  
1182 An Intermediate, that is a Superior that is also an Inferior, also has a confirm-set, but this is  
1183 controlled rather differently to the top-most Superior (Decider) described above.  
1184

1185 As an Inferior, the interface between the application and BTP elements is not fully defined in  
1186 this specification. However, within the standard control relationship, issuing BEGIN with a  
1187 related CONTEXT to a Factory will cause the creation of a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer  
1188 (depending on whether the BEGIN parameter asked for atomic or cohesive behaviour).  
1189 Initially, of course, the new Intermediate has no Inferiors – however, unlike a Participant (in  
1190 the strict sense of the term), it has a “superior-address” to which ENROL can be sent to enrol  
1191 Inferiors. This address is a field of the new CONTEXT.  
1192

1193 The behaviour of the Intermediate towards its Inferiors, during the active phase, is basically  
1194 the same as for the Decider:

- 1195 • ENROL messages can be received, adding a new Inferior
- 1196
- 1197 • Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior. The Inferior is  
1198 immediately removed from the set of Inferiors
- 1199
- 1200 • CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior
- 1201
- 1202 • PREPARED may be received from an Inferior
- 1203

1204 In some circumstances, receipt of an incoming message allows an Intermediate to  
1205 determine that a state change for the whole transaction node takes place. The  
1206 Intermediate is able to send messages to its Superior at its own initiative (whereas a  
1207 Decider can only respond to a received message from the Terminator), so the receipt of  
1208 a message from an Inferior can trigger the sending of messages. This is especially the  
1209 case if the Intermediate knows (from application knowledge, perhaps involving  
1210 received or sent CONTEXT\_REPLY messages) that there will be no further  
1211 enrolments. In particular:

- 1212
- 1213 • If CANCELLED is received from an Inferior, and this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-  
1214 coordinator can itself cancel - CANCEL is sent to other Inferiors, and CANCELLED  
1215 to the Superior
- 1216 • If RESIGN is received from the only Inferior and there will be no other enrolments,  
1217 the Intermediate can itself resign, sending RESIGN to the Superior
- 1218 • If PREPARED is received from the Superior, it is known there will be no other  
1219 enrolments and this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-coordinator can become prepared  
1220 (assuming successful persistence of the appropriate information) and send  
1221 PREPARED to the Superior.
- 1222

1223 For a Sub-composer, application logic will invariably be involved in determining what effect  
1224 a CANCELLED and PREPARED from an Inferior have – though in a real implementation,  
1225 this logic may be delegated to the BTP-support software.

1226

1227 The Intermediate may initiate cancellation or the two-phase outcome exchange, either as a  
1228 result of receiving the corresponding message (CANCEL, PREPARE) from the Superior, or  
1229 triggered by its own controlling application element. For a Sub-composer, this may be partial  
1230 - a Sub-composer might be instructed by the application element to cancel some Inferiors and  
1231 send PREPARE to others. Receipt of PREPARE from the Superior will often have a similar  
1232 effect to a Decider receiving CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION – PREPARE is propagated to all  
1233 Inferiors that have not indicated they are PREPARED. However, exactly what happens on  
1234 receiving PREPARE will depend on the application – receipt of the PREPARE may be  
1235 visible to the application element and cause it to initiate further application activity (perhaps  
1236 causing enrolment of new Inferiors) before it is determined whether to propagate PREPARE,  
1237 and with a Sub-composer, some of the Inferiors may be instructed to cancel instead.

1238

1239 Assuming the Intermediate does not cancel as a whole (in which case CANCEL would be  
1240 sent to all Inferiors), the Intermediate will at some point attempt to become prepared. If it is a  
1241 Sub-coordinator, this will require that PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors. For a  
1242 Sub-composer, application logic will determine from which Inferiors PREPARED is  
1243 required, with the others being cancelled. In either case, the Intermediate will persist the  
1244 information about the Inferiors that are to be in the confirm-set and about the Superior, if this  
1245 persisting is successful, send PREPARED to its own Superior.

1246  
1247 If CANCEL is subsequently received from the Superior, this is propagated to all the Inferiors  
1248 and the persistent information removed (or effectively removed as far as recovery is  
1249 concerned). It is not important which order this is done in, since the recovery sequence will  
1250 ensure that a cancel outcome is eventually delivered anyway.

1251  
1252 If CONFIRM is received from the Superior (which can only be after sending PREPARED to  
1253 the Superior), this is likewise propagated to the Inferiors. For a Sub-coordinator, CONFIRM  
1254 is invariably sent to all Inferiors. However, for a Sub-composer it is possible further  
1255 application logic intervenes and some of the Inferiors are rejected from the confirm-set at this  
1256 late stage. (This can only occur when the application work, as defined by the contract to the  
1257 Superior, can be performed by some sub-set of the Inferiors.) The Intermediate may, but is  
1258 not required to, change the persistent information to reflect the confirm outcome (though a  
1259 Sub-composer that selects only some Inferiors probably will need to re-write the information  
1260 to ensure the correct subset are confirmed despite possible failures). If the information is not  
1261 changed, then, on recovery, the Intermediate will find itself to be in a prepared state and will  
1262 interrogate the Superior to re-determine the outcome. If the information is changed, a  
1263 recovered Intermediate can immediately continue with ordering confirmation to its Inferiors.

1264  
1265 If CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE is received from the Superior, either before or after the  
1266 Intermediate has become PREPARED, the effect is very similar to a Decider receiving  
1267 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION. If there is only one Inferior, the CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE  
1268 may be propagated to that Inferior. Otherwise, the Intermediate behaves as a Decider, making  
1269 a confirm decision if it can.

1270  
1271 If one or more Inferiors make contradictory autonomous decisions, or HAZARD is received  
1272 from an Inferior, the Intermediate may report this to the Superior using HAZARD. However,  
1273 BTP does not require this. Since the Superior may be owned and controlled by a different  
1274 organisation, there may be business reasons not to report such problems.

1275

## 1276 **Optimisations and variations**

1277

### 1278 **Spontaneous prepared**

1279

1280 As described above, before a Superior can order confirmation to an Inferior, the Inferior must  
1281 become “prepared”, meaning that it is ready to confirm or to cancel as it so ordered and send  
1282 the PREPARED message as a report of this. In the conventional message sequence, as shown  
1283 above, the Inferior attempts to become prepared when it receives a PREPARE message from  
1284 the Superior. The PREPARE in turn is sent by the Superior when it receives an appropriate  
1285 request from its controlling application (or from its own Superior, if there is one). The



1286 application controlling the Superior will request the sending of PREPARE when it  
1287 determines that no further application work associated with this Inferior (or, perhaps with the  
1288 whole business transaction) will occur.

1289  
1290 However, for some applications, the application element controlling the Inferior will know  
1291 that the application work for which the Inferior will be responsible is complete before a  
1292 PREPARE is sent from the Superior. In fact, because the application element has autonomy  
1293 in determining how application work is to be allocated to Inferiors, it is possible for the  
1294 Inferior-side application element to know the work is complete **for a particular Inferior**  
1295 when Superior-side application element will be sending more message to the Inferior-side.  
1296 (The future work will, probably, require the enrollment of additional Inferiors.)  
1297

1298 BTP consequently allows the application element controlling an Inferior to cause the Inferior  
1299 to become prepared, and to send PREPARED to the Superior without PREPARE having been  
1300 received from the Superior. From the perspective of the BTP Superior the Inferior sends  
1301 PREPARED spontaneously. Apart from this, a spontaneous PREPARED message is the same  
1302 as, and has the same effect and implications as one induced by a PREPARE message.  
1303

### 1304 One-shot

1305  
1306 In the “conventional” message sequence shown above and assuming the Initiator, Terminator  
1307 and Coordinator on the one side, and “Service”, Enroller and Participant on the other are  
1308 located within their respective parties, there are eight messages passed in one direction or the  
1309 other between the two parties. There are four round-trip exchanges: the application request  
1310 and response exchange, the ENROL/ENROLLED exchange (going in the opposite direction  
1311 and overlapped with the application exchange), then PREPARE/PREPARED and the  
1312 CONFIRM/CONFIRMED. However, if the application exchange is a single  
1313 request/response, it is possible to reduce these eight to two round-trips– the first of which  
1314 merges the first three of the conventional sequence. The fundamental two-phase nature of  
1315 BTP (or any coordination mechanism) means there have to be at least two round trips – one  
1316 before the confirm-or-cancel decision is made at the Superior, one after. This merging of the  
1317 exchanges is termed “one-shot”, as it requires only one exchange to take the relationship from  
1318 non-existent to waiting for the confirm-or-cancel decision.  
1319

1320 [Figure 14](#)~~Figure-14~~ shows a typical “one-shot” message sequence. The diagram distinguishes  
1321 an additional aspect of the application elements, labelled “context-handler”. This is not a role  
1322 in the BTP model, but is used only to distinguish a set of responsibilities and actions. In a real  
1323 implementation these might be performed by the user application itself, or might be  
1324 performed by the BTP-supporting infrastructure on the path between the application  
1325 elements. ([Figure 9](#)~~Figure-9~~ could be redrawn to show the context-handlers, but to no  
1326 particular benefit) As in the conventional case, the CONTEXT is sent related to the  
1327 application request (the creation of the CONTEXT by the Factory is not shown and is the  
1328 same as the conventional case). The “context-handler” is aware of the sending of the  
1329 CONTEXT.  
1330

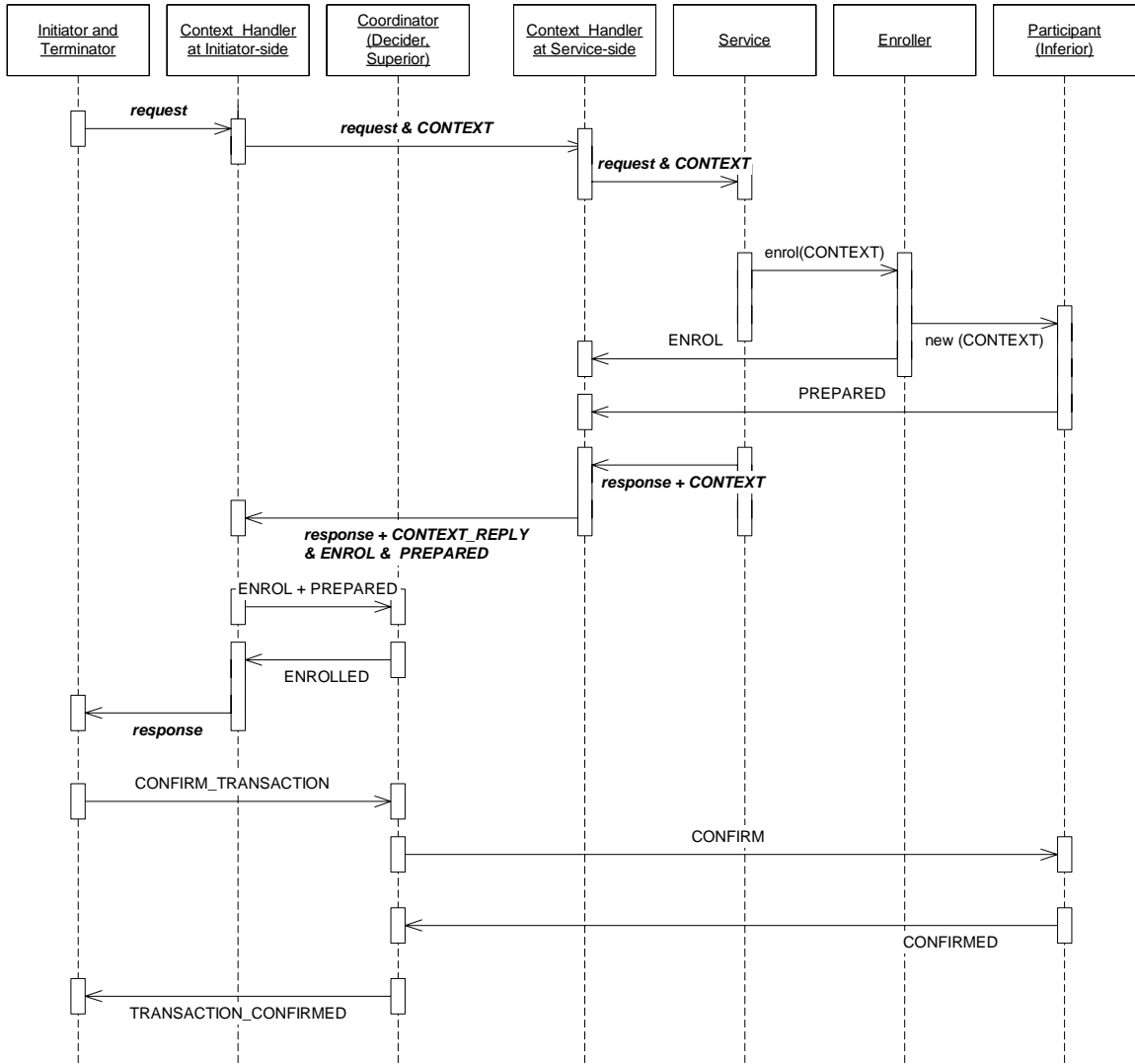
1331 On the responder (service side), however, when the application element creates the Inferior,  
1332 the ENROL is not sent immediately, but retained. The application performs the “provisional

1333 effect” implied by the received message and the Inferior becomes prepared and issues a  
1334 PREPARED message, which is also retained. When the application response is available, it is  
1335 sent with the retained messages and the CONTEXT\_REPLY (which indicates that the related  
1336 ENROL will complete the enrolments implied by the earlier transmission of the CONTEXT.  
1337

1338 When this group of messages is received by the context-handler on the client side, the  
1339 contained ENROL and PREPARED messages are forwarded to the Superior (whose address  
1340 was on the original CONTEXT and so is known to the context-handler). An ENROLLED  
1341 message is sent back to the context-handler, assuring it that the enrolment was successful and  
1342 the application can progress. If enrollment fails and the business transaction is atomic,  
1343 confirmation must be prevented – this responsibility falls on the context-handler and the  
1344 client application, since the failure of the enrolment implies that Superior itself is  
1345 inaccessible. If enrolment fails and the business transaction is a cohesion, the appropriate  
1346 response is a matter for the application.  
1347

1348 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single application  
1349 message, there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each one sent related with the  
1350 CONTEXT\_REPLY. If an operation fails, a CANCELLED message may be sent instead of a  
1351 PREPARED – if the Superior is atomic, this will ensure it cancels, if cohesive, the client  
1352 application will be aware of this and behave appropriately.  
1353

1354 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the  
1355 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained  
1356 by the application or by the binding in use.  
1357



1358

1359

**Figure 14 – A message sequence showing the “one-shot” optimisation**

1360

### 1361 Resignation

1362 After an Inferior is enrolled, it may be determined that the application work it is responsible  
 1363 for has no real effect – more exactly, that the counter-effect, if cancelled, and the final effect,  
 1364 if confirmed, will be identical. In such a case the Inferior can effectively un-enrol itself by  
 1365 sending a RESIGN message to the Superior. This can be done “spontaneously” (as far as BTP  
 1366 is concerned) or as a response to a received PREPARE message. It cannot be done after the  
 1367 Inferior has become prepared.

1368

1369 An Inferior from which RESIGN has been received is not considered an Inferior in discussion  
 1370 of the confirm-set – the phrase “remaining Inferiors” is used to mean only non-resigned  
 1371 Inferiors.

1372  
1373  
1374  
1375  
1376  
1377  
1378  
1379  
1380  
1381  
1382  
1383  
1384  
1385  
1386  
1387  
1388  
1389  
1390  
1391  
1392  
1393  
1394  
1395  
1396  
1397  
1398  
1399  
1400  
1401  
1402  
1403  
1404  
1405  
1406  
1407  
1408  
1409  
1410  
1411  
1412  
1413  
1414  
1415  
1416  
1417

### **One-phase confirmation**

If a Coordinator or Composer that has been requested to confirm has only one (remaining) Inferior in the confirm-set, it may delegate the confirm-or-cancel decision to that Inferior, just requesting it to confirm rather than performing the two-phase exchange. This is done by sending the CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE message. Unlike the two-phase exchange (PREPARED received, CONFIRM sent), it is possible with CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE for a failure to occur that leads to the original Coordinator or Composer (and its controlling application element – the Terminator) being uncertain whether the outcome was confirmation or cancellation.

### **Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions**

As described above, BTP does not require a Participant, while it is responsible for holding application resources such that can be confirmed or cancelled, to use any particular mechanism for maintaining this state. A Participant that “becomes prepared” may choose to let the “provisional effect” be identical to the “final effect”, and hold a compensating “counter effect” ready to implement cancellation; or it may make the provisional effect effectively null, and only perform the real application work as the final effect if confirmed; or the “provisional effect” may involve performance of the application work and locking application data against other access; or other patterns, as may be constrained or permitted by the application.

Although a Participant is not required to lock data (as would be the case with some other transaction specifications) on becoming prepared, it is nevertheless in a state of doubt, and this doubt may have application or business implications. Accordingly it is recognised that a Participant (or, rather the business party controlling the application element and the Participant) may need to limit the promise made by sending PREPARED, and retain the right to apply its own decision to confirm or cancel to the Participant and the application effects it is responsible for. This is described as an “autonomous” decision. It is closely analogous to the heuristic decisions recognised in other transaction specifications. The only difference is the conceptual one that heuristic decisions are typically considered to occur only as a result of rare and unpredictable failure, whereas BTP recognises that the right to take an autonomous decision may be critical to the willingness of a business party to be involved in the business transaction at all. BTP therefore allows Participants (and all Inferiors) to indicate that there are limits on how long they are willing to promise to remain in the prepared state, and that after that time they may invoke their right of taking an autonomous decision.

Taking an autonomous decision will of course run the risk of breaking the intended consistency of outcome across the business transaction, if the autonomous decision of the Inferior contradicts the decision (for this Inferior) made by the Superior. The Superior will have received the PREPARED message and thus be permitted to make a confirm decision (directly, or through exchanges with a Terminator application element or with its own Superior). An Inferior taking an autonomous decision informs the Superior by sending CONFIRMED or CANCELLED, as appropriate, without waiting for an outcome order from the Superior. This may cross the outcome message from the Superior, or the Superior may not make its decision till later. If the decisions agree, the normal CONFIRM or CANCEL message is sent. In the case of CANCEL, this completes the relationship – the CANCEL and

1418 CANCELLED messages acknowledge each other, regardless of which travels first. In the  
1419 case of CONFIRM, another CONFIRMED message is needed.

1420  
1421 If the Superior's decision is contradicted by the autonomous decision, the Superior may need  
1422 to record this, report it to management systems or inform the Terminator application or its  
1423 own Superior. When this has been done (details are implementation-specific, but may be  
1424 constrained by the application), the Superior sends a CONTRADICTION message to the  
1425 Inferior. If an outcome message was sent earlier (crossing the announcement of the  
1426 autonomous decision), the Inferior will already know there was a contradiction, but the  
1427 receipt of the CONTRADICTION message informs the Inferior that the Superior knows and  
1428 has done whatever it considers necessary to cope.

1429  
1430 As mentioned, BTP allows an Inferior to inform the Superior, with a qualifier on the  
1431 PREPARED message, that the promise to remain in the prepared state will expire. In turn this  
1432 allows the application on the Superior side to avoid risking a contradictory decision by  
1433 making and sending its own decision in time. The Superior side can also indicate, with  
1434 another qualifier, a minimum time for which it expects the prepared promise to remain valid.

1435  
1436 As well as deliberate and forewarned autonomous decisions, BTP recognises that failures and  
1437 exceptional conditions may force unplanned autonomous decisions. In the protocol sequence  
1438 these are treated exactly like planned autonomous decisions – if they contradict, the Superior  
1439 will be informed and a CONTRADICTION message sent to the Inferior.

1440  
1441 Autonomous decisions, planned or unplanned, are equivalent to the heuristic decisions of  
1442 other transaction systems. The term is avoided in BTP since it may carry implications that it  
1443 only occurs in an unplanned manner.

1444

## 1445 **Recovery and failure handling**

1446

### 1447 **Types of failure**

1448

1449 BTP is designed to ensure the delivery of a consistent decision for a business transaction to  
1450 the parties involved, even in the event of failure. Failures can be classified as:

1451

1452 **Communication failure:** messages between BTP actors are lost and not delivered. BTP  
1453 assumes the carrier protocol ensures that messages are either delivered correctly (without  
1454 corruption) or are lost, but does not assume that all losses are reported nor that messages  
1455 sent separately are delivered in the order of sending.

1456

1457 **Node failure (system failure, site failure):** a machine hosting one or more BTP actors  
1458 stops processing and all its volatile data is lost. BTP assumes a site fails by stopping – it  
1459 either operates correctly or not at all, it never operates incorrectly.

1460

1461 Communication failure may become known to a BTP implementation by an indication from  
1462 the lower layers or may be inferred (or suspected) by the expiry of a timeout. Recovery from  
1463 a communication failure requires only that the two actors can again send messages to each  
1464 other and continue or complete the progress of the business transaction.

1465  
1466 A node failure is distinguished from communication failure because there is loss of volatile  
1467 state. To ensure consistent application of the decision of a business transaction, BTP requires  
1468 that some state information will be persisted despite node failure. Exactly what real events  
1469 correspond to node failure but leave the persistent information undamaged is a matter for  
1470 implementation choice, depending on application requirements; however, for most  
1471 application uses, power failure should be survivable (an exception would be if the data  
1472 manipulated by the associated operations was volatile). In all cases, there will be some level  
1473 of event sufficiently catastrophic to lose persistent information and the ability to recover—  
1474 destruction of the computer or bankruptcy of the organisation, for example.

1475  
1476 Recovery from node failure involves recreating an accessible communications endpoint in a  
1477 network node that has access to the persistent information for incomplete transactions. This  
1478 may be a recreation of the original actor using the same addresses; or using a different  
1479 address; or there may be a distinct recovery entity, which can access the persistent data, but  
1480 has a different address; other implementation approaches are possible. The recovered, and  
1481 possibly relocated actor may or may not be capable of performing new application work  
1482 Restoration of the actor from persistent information will often result in a partial loss of state,  
1483 relative to the volatile state reached before the failure. In some states, there may be total loss  
1484 of knowledge of the business transaction, including particular Superior:Inferior relationships.  
1485 After recovery from node failure, the implementation behaves much as if a communication  
1486 failure had occurred.

### 1487 1488 **Persistent information**

1489  
1490 BTP **requires** that certain state information is persisted – these are information that records  
1491 an Inferior’s decision to be prepared, a Superior’s decision to confirm and an Inferior’s  
1492 autonomous decision . Requiring the first two to be persistent ensures that a consistent  
1493 decision can be reached for the business transaction and that it is delivered to all involved  
1494 nodes, despite failure. Requiring an Inferior’s autonomous decision to be persistent allows  
1495 BTP to ensure that, if the autonomous decision is contradictory (i.e. opposite to the decision  
1496 at the Superior), the contradiction will be reported to the Superior, despite failures.

1497  
1498 BTP also permits, but does not require, recovery of the Superior:Inferior relationship in the  
1499 active state (unlike many transaction protocols, where a communication or node failure in  
1500 active state would invariably cause rollback of the transaction). Recovery in the active state  
1501 may require that the application exchange is resynchronised as well – BTP does not directly  
1502 support this, but allows continuation of the business transaction if the application desires it.  
1503 Apart from the (optional) recovery in active state, BTP follows the well-known presume-  
1504 abort model – it is only **required** that information be persisted when decisions are made (and  
1505 not, for example, on enrolment). This means that on recovery one side may have persistent  
1506 information while the other does not. This occurs, among other cases, when an Inferior has  
1507 decided to be prepared but the Superior never confirmed (so the decision is “presumed” to be  
1508 cancelled), and when the Superior did confirm, the Inferior applied the confirmation and  
1509 removed its persistent information but the acknowledgement message (CONFIRMED) was  
1510 never received by the Superior.

1511

1512 Information to be persisted when an Inferior decides to be prepared has to be sufficient to re-  
1513 establish communication with the Superior, to apply a confirm decision and to apply a cancel  
1514 decision. It will thus need to include the addressing and identification information for the  
1515 Superior. The information needed to apply the confirm or cancel decision will depend on the  
1516 application and the associated operations.

1517  
1518 A Superior must persist the corresponding information to allow it to re-establish  
1519 communication with the Inferior – that is the addressing and identification information for the  
1520 Inferior. When it must persist this information depends on its position within the transaction  
1521 tree. If it is the top of the tree – i.e. it is the Decider for the business transaction -- it need only  
1522 persist this information if and when it makes a decision to confirm (and, for a Cohesion, only  
1523 if this Inferior is in the confirm-set). A Superior that is an intermediate in the tree – i.e. it is an  
1524 Inferior to some other Superior – must persist the information about each of its own Inferiors  
1525 as part of (or before) persisting its own decision to be prepared. For such an intermediate, the  
1526 “decision to confirm” as Superior is made when either CONFIRM is received from its  
1527 Superior or it makes an autonomous decision to confirm. If CONFIRM is received, the  
1528 persistent information may be changed to show the confirm decision, but alternatively, the  
1529 receipt of the CONFIRM can be treated as the decision itself and the CONFIRM message  
1530 propagated to the Inferiors without changing the persistent information. If the persistent  
1531 information is left unchanged and there is a node failure, on recovery the entity (as an  
1532 Inferior) will be in a prepared state, and will rediscover the confirm decision (using the  
1533 recovery exchanges to its Superior) before propagating it to its Inferior(s).

1534  
1535 Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, and the BTP messages may  
1536 be repeated if they are lost in transit (see next section), the persistent information may need to  
1537 include sufficient to recreate the qualifiers, to allow them to be resent with their carrying BTP  
1538 message. This applies both to qualifiers on PREPARED (which would be persisted by the  
1539 Inferior) and on CONFIRM (which would be persisted by the Superior).

1540  
1541 In some cases, an implementation may not need to make an active change to have a persistent  
1542 record of a decision, provided that the implementation will restore itself to the appropriate  
1543 state on recovery. For example, an implementation that, as Inferior, always used the default-  
1544 is-cancel mechanism, and recorded the timeout (to cancel) in the persistent information on  
1545 becoming prepared, and always updated or removed that record when it applied a confirm  
1546 instruction could treat the presence of an expired record as effectively a record of an  
1547 autonomous cancel decision.

## 1548 1549 **Recovery messages**

1550  
1551 Once the Superior:Inferior relationship has entered the completion phase – BTP does not  
1552 generally use special messages in recovery, but merely permits the resending of the previous  
1553 message – thus, for example, PREPARE, PREPARED, CANCEL, CONFIRM can all be sent  
1554 repeatedly. Resending the previous message means a possible loss of the original message  
1555 may be invisible to the receiver. The trigger for this re-sending is implementation dependent  
1556 – a reported communication failure, a timeout expiry while waiting for a reply, the re-  
1557 establishment of communications or the general restoration of function after a node failure  
1558 are all possible triggers. An incoming repetition of the last message received, if it has already

1559 been replied to (e.g. receiving PREPARE after PREPARED has been sent), should normally  
1560 trigger a resending of the last message sent – since that sent message may have got lost.<sup>4</sup>  
1561

1562 While in the active phase – i.e. prior to entering completion – there is no appropriate last  
1563 message that can be sent. However, for active-phase recovery there needs to be some way for  
1564 the BTP actors to determine that the peer is still there and still aware of the Superior:Inferior  
1565 relationship. In this case, the peers can interrogate each other using the INFERIOR\_STATE  
1566 or SUPERIOR\_STATE messages, informing the peer of their own state and requesting a  
1567 response – which may be the opposite message, or one of the main BTP messages (which  
1568 perhaps had been lost). If it is another SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE message, that reply does not  
1569 ask for a response. Receiving a SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages that asks for a response  
1570 does not require an immediate response – especially if an implementation is waiting to  
1571 determine a decision (perhaps because it is itself waiting for a decision from elsewhere), an  
1572 implementation may choose not to reply until it wishes too.  
1573

1574 The SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages are also used as replies when the receiver of **any** of  
1575 the Superior:Inferior message has determined that there is no corresponding state information  
1576 – the targeted Superior or Inferior does not exist (or is known to have completed and is no  
1577 longer an active entity). The SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages with a status of “unknown”  
1578 is the indication that the state information does not exist.  
1579

1580 The SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages are also available as replies to any Superior:Inferior  
1581 message in the (transient, one hopes) case where, after failure an implementation cannot  
1582 currently determine whether the persistent information exists or not, or what its state is, and  
1583 so cannot give a definitive answer. The SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages with a status of  
1584 “inaccessible” is the indication that the existence of state information cannot be determined.  
1585 The receiver of such a message should normally treat it as a “retry later” suggestion.  
1586

## 1587 Redirection

1588  
1589 As described above, BTP uses the presume-abort model for recovery. A corollary of this is  
1590 that there are cases where one side will attempt to re-establish communication when there is  
1591 no persistent information for the relationship at the far-end, because that side either never  
1592 reached a state where the state was persisted, or had been persisted, but then progressed to  
1593 remove the state information. In such cases, it is important the side that is attempting  
1594 recovery can distinguish between unsuccessful attempts to connect to the holder of the  
1595 persistent information and when the information no longer exists. If the peer information does  
1596 not exist, the side that is attempting recovery can draw appropriate conclusions (that the peer  
1597 either was never prepared, never confirmed or has already completed) and complete its part  
1598 of the transaction; if it merely fails to get through, it is stuck in attempting recovery.  
1599

1600 Two mechanisms are provided to assist implementation flexibility while allowing completion  
1601 of Superior:Inferior relationships when only one side has any persistent information. The  
1602 mechanisms are:

---

<sup>4</sup> BTP’s capability of binding to alternative carrier protocols is part of the motivation for not having a distinct recovery message sequence, since the carrier binding does not necessarily have a well-defined communication failure indication.



- 1603 o Address fields which provide the address that will be used by the peer to send  
1604 messages to an actor (effectively a “callback address”) can be a set of  
1605 addresses, which are alternatives, one of which is chosen as the target address  
1606 for the future message. If the sender of that message finds the address does  
1607 not work, it can try a different alternative.
- 1608 o The REDIRECT message can be used to inform the peer that an address  
1609 previously given is no longer valid and to supply a replacement address (or  
1610 set of addresses). REDIRECT can be issued either as a response to receipt of  
1611 a message or spontaneously.

1612

1613 The two mechanisms can be used in combination, with one or more of the original set of  
1614 addresses just being a redirector, which does not itself ever have direct access to the state  
1615 information for the transaction, but will respond to any message with an appropriate  
1616 REDIRECT.

1617

1618 REDIRECT as a message is only used on the Superior:Inferior relationship, where each side  
1619 holds the address of the other. On the other relationships (e.g. Terminator:Decider), one side  
1620 (e.g. Terminator) has the address of the other, and initiates all the message exchanges.  
1621 However, the entity whose address is known to the other may itself move - e.g. if a  
1622 Coordinator, which will be both Decider and Superior changes its address as a Superior, it  
1623 will probably change its address as a Decider too. In this case, a FAULT reply to a  
1624 misdirected message can be used, assuming there is some entity available at, or on the path to  
1625 the old address that understands BTP sufficiently to provide the redirection information.

1626

1627 Some implementations, in which a single addressable entity with one, constant address deals  
1628 with all transactions, distinguishing them by identifier, will not need to supply “backup”  
1629 addresses (and would only use REDIRECT if permanently migrated).

1630

### 1631 Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit

1632

1633 BTP does not provide facilities or impose requirements on the recovery of  
1634 Terminator:Decider relationships, other than allowing messages to be repeated. A Terminator  
1635 may survive failures (by retaining knowledge of the Decider’s address and identifier), but this  
1636 is an implementation option. Although a Decider (if it decides to confirm) will persist  
1637 information about the confirm decision, it is not required, after failure, to remain accessible  
1638 using the address it originally gave to the Initiator (and used by the Terminator). Any such  
1639 recovery is an implementation option.

1640

1641 A Decider has no way of initiating a call to a Terminator to ensure that it is still active, and  
1642 thus no way of detecting that a Terminator has failed. The Decider always has the right to  
1643 initiate cancellation, but if the application (Terminator) and the Decider have different views  
1644 about how long a “long time” is, then either the Decider might wait unnecessarily for a  
1645 completion request (e.g. CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION) that will never arrive, or it might  
1646 initiate cancellation while the application is still active. To avoid these irritations, a standard  
1647 qualifier “Transaction timelimit” can be used (by the Initiator) to inform the Decider when it  
1648 can assume the Terminator will not request confirmation and so it (the Decider) should  
1649 initiate cancellation.

1650  
1651  
1652  
1653  
1654  
1655  
1656  
1657  
1658  
1659  
1660  
1661  
1662  
1663  
1664  
1665  
1666  
1667  
1668  
1669  
1670  
1671  
1672  
1673  
1674  
1675  
1676  
1677  
1678  
1679  
1680  
1681  
1682  
1683  
1684  
1685  
1686  
1687  
1688  
1689  
1690  
1691  
1692  
1693  
1694  
1695  
1696

### **Contradictions and hazard**

As described above (see “Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions”), in some circumstances an Inferior may apply a decision that is contradictory to the decision of the Superior. This can occur in a semi-planned manner, when the Inferior has announced a timeout on the PREPARED message but no outcome message has been received, or as a result of an exceptional condition that forces the Inferior to break the promise implicit in PREPARED, regardless of timers. In both cases, this is considered an autonomous decision by the Inferior. An autonomous decision, of itself, does not imply a contradiction – it only results in a contradiction if the decision is opposite to that of the Superior (in the case of a cohesive Superior, opposite to the decision that applies to this Inferior).

In order to ensure that a contradiction is detected despite node and communication failures, it is required that information about the taking of the autonomous decision be persisted until a BTP message received from the Superior indicates either that there was no contradiction (the decisions were in line – CANCEL is received after an autonomous cancel or CONFIRM is received after an autonomous confirm) or that the Superior is aware of the contradiction (CONTRADICTION is received). Note that the Inferior will become aware of the fact of the contradiction when it receives the “wrong” message, but must retain the record of its own decision until it receives the CONTRADICTION message, which tells it the Superior knows too.

The Superior’s action on becoming aware of the contradiction is not determined by this specification. In particular, if the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, it is not required by this specification to report the contradiction to its own Superior (which may, for example, be controlled by a different organisation). The Superior may report the problem to management systems or record it for manual repair. However, BTP does provide mechanisms to report the contradiction to the next higher Superior (if there is one) or to the Terminator application element.

A contradiction occurring in an Inferior will usually mean the immediate Superior has a “mixed” condition – some of the application work it was responsible for has confirmed, some has cancelled (and contrary to any cohesion confirm-set selection). If the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, it can report the mixed condition to its own Superior with the HAZARD message. If the Superior is the top-most in the tree, it can report the problem with the INFERIOR\_STATUSES message, which will detail the state of all the Inferiors.

If a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer having sent (or attempted to send) the outcome message to its Inferiors, is temporarily unable to get a response (CONFIRMED or CANCELLED), it may either wait until a response does come back or choose to reply to its own Superior with a HAZARD message indicating that a contradiction is “possible”. If it does choose to send HAZARD, it is required to persist a record of this until it receives a CONTRADICTION message from the Superior, or a message from the Inferior indicating there was no contradiction in fact.

HAZARD is also used to indicate that it has become impossible to cleanly and consistently achieve either a confirmed or a cancelled state for the application work. In this case, there is

1697 can be no guarantee that the problem will be reliably reported – especially because it may be  
1698 the inability to persist information that is the cause of the problem.

### 1699 **Relation of BTP to application and carrier protocols**

1700 BTP messages are communicated between actors in two distinguishable circumstances:  
1701 a) in establishing and progressing the outcome and control relationships between BTP  
1702 actors, and between application elements and BTP actors – Initiator:Factory,  
1703 Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior etc.  
1704 b) in association with application messages that are communicated between application  
1705 elements.  
1706

1707  
1708 In the first case, interoperable communication requires a specification of how the abstract  
1709 BTP messages are represented and encoded, and how they are transmitted. This specification  
1710 is a **carrier protocol binding** (or just “binding”, if the context is clear). BTP allows bindings  
1711 to a multiplicity of carrier protocols. The only requirement that BTP makes is that the  
1712 transmission of a message either delivers an uncorrupted message or fails. BTP does not  
1713 require that the carrier report failure to deliver a message, to either side, nor that messages are  
1714 delivered in the order they are sent (though implementations can take advantage of  
1715 information from a richer carrier, which can improve performance in various ways). BTP  
1716 messages communicated in this way have semantics that are defined in this specification – a  
1717 PREPARE message (for example), refers back to the ENROL via the “inferior-identifier”  
1718 parameter and is an instruction to the Inferior to become and report that it is prepared.  
1719

1720 In the second case, the full semantics cannot be defined in this specification. Interoperation  
1721 with BTP requires that the parties have a common understanding of what is being confirmed  
1722 or cancelled, but this mutual understanding is defined by the contract of the application, not  
1723 by BTP. (The contract may be explicit or implicit, declared by one side as take-it-or-leave-it,  
1724 or may be negotiated in some way.) Part of this contract will include how the combination of  
1725 the application protocol (i.e. the application messages and their sequencing) and BTP operate  
1726 such that the two sides are agreed as to which application operations are part of which  
1727 business transaction. This will often be achieved by sending application messages and BTP  
1728 messages in “association” in some way – thus an application message sent in association with  
1729 a CONTEXT can be specified (by the application contract) to mean that if work is done as  
1730 result of the receipt of the message, one or more Inferiors should be enrolled to apply the  
1731 confirm/cancel decision to that work. Similarly, an application message may be sent  
1732 associated with an ENROL with the contractual understanding that the message refers to  
1733 some application work that has been made the responsibility of the Inferior being enrolled.  
1734

1735 The concrete representation of this “association” is also a matter for the application protocol  
1736 specification. There are several ways this can be done, including:

- 1737 • the BTP message is contained within the application message, or both are contained  
1738 within a larger construct;
- 1739 • the application message contains a field that is the superior-identifier or inferior-  
1740 identifier that is also present on the CONTEXT or the ENROL
- 1741 • the BTP message contains a qualifier that references (a field of) the application  
1742 message in some way (e.g. if the application message is an invoice, the qualifier  
1743 might contain the invoice number)

- 1744           • the encoding of the BTP and application messages reference each other (e.g. using  
1745 XML id and refid attributes)

1746  
1747  
1748  
1749  
1750  
1751

In all cases, the application specification<sup>5</sup> will need to define the mechanism so that both parties have common understanding. Many applications will use the same mechanism and their specifications can therefore take advantage of standard patterns, and their implementations of standard tools.

1752  
1753  
1754  
1755  
1756

The association of an application message with a BTP message is analogous to the concept of “related” BTP messages. “Related” BTP messages are sent as a group, with a declared and defined semantic for the group. Associated application and BTP messages can be considered as “related”, with the proviso that the semantic is defined by the application, not by BTP.

1757  
1758  
1759  
1760  
1761  
1762  
1763  
1764  
1765  
1766  
1767  
1768

There is no necessary relationship between how the application messages and any associated BTP messages are transmitted by carrier protocols, and the carrier binding for the BTP messages. BTP messages are invariably sent to a BTP actor whose address has been passed to the sender by some means – thus a CONTEXT contains the address of the Superior to which ENROLS will be sent, and the ENROL contains the address of the Inferior. Similarly, BEGUN contains the address (as Decider) of the new Composer or Coordinator. These addresses are all sets of addresses (possibly of cardinality one), and each individual address identifies which binding is to be used. Thus, for example, when a CONTEXT is sent associated with an application message, the ENROL will travel on a carrier binding identified by the particular address from the CONTEXT that the Enroller chooses to use – which may have no relationship to how the application message arrived.

1769  
1770  
1771  
1772  
1773  
1774  
1775

Despite this, it will be common that the application binding and the BTP binding will use the same carrier. This is the case in the bindings specified in this edition of the specification, which define a binding of BTP to SOAP 1.1 over HTTP. Included in this SOAP/HTTP binding specification, are rules that allow an application to associate (relate) a single CONTEXT or a single ENROL (carried in the SOAP header) with the application message(s) carried in the SOAP body.

1776  
1777

## Other elements

1778  
1779

### Identifiers

1780  
1781  
1782  
1783  
1784  
1785  
1786  
1787

An Identifier is a globally unambiguous identification of the state corresponding to one of Decider, Superior or Inferior. Where a single entity has more than one of these roles (at the same node in the same transaction, as with a Sub-coordinator that is both Superior and Inferior), the Identifiers may be the same or different, at implementation option - they are distinguished by which messages the Identifier is used on. (A Superior has only one Superior-identifier, although it may be in multiple Superior:Inferior relationships, each with a separate state in terms of the state table).

---

<sup>5</sup> The “application specification”, or “application protocol specification” may be very informal or may be a standardised agreement.

1788 The state identified by an Identifier can be accessed by BTP messages sent to any of the  
1789 addresses supplied with the Identifier in the appropriate message (CONTEXT, BEGUN,  
1790 ENROL), or as updated by REDIRECT. An Identifier itself has no location implications.  
1791 (Identifiers are specified, in the XML representation, as syntactically URIs - by their use as  
1792 names of BTP entities, they are URNs. If an Identifier happens to specify a network location  
1793 (i.e. it is a URL), it is treated as an opaque value by BTP)

1794

1795 Identifiers are specified as being globally unambiguous - the same Identifier only ever  
1796 identifies one Decider, Superior or Inferior over all systems and all time. In practice, an  
1797 Identifier could be re-used if there is no possibility of the colliding values being confused.  
1798 However implementations are recommended to use truly unambiguous Identifiers (that is to  
1799 use them as URNs).

1800

1801

### Addresses

1802 In most cases, BTP actors that need to communicate are informed of each others addresses  
1803 from received BTP messages. When an Inferior is to be enrolled, a CONTEXT message  
1804 which contains the address of the Superior will have been received or otherwise passed to the  
1805 Enroller and the Inferior. The ENROL message received by the Superior contains the address  
1806 of the Inferior. The BEGUN returned from a Factory to the Initiator contains the address of  
1807 the Decider, and this can be passed to the Terminator or any Status Requestor.

1808

1809 The addresses carried in these messages (which are effectively “call-back” addresses, to be  
1810 used as the destination of future messages) are sets of tripartite addresses. Each contains an  
1811 identifier (binding name) for the binding to an underlying transport, or carrier protocol, a  
1812 “binding address”, in a format specific to the carrier which is the information necessary to  
1813 connect using that carrier, and an optional additional information field. This additional  
1814 information is opaque to all but the future destination (which also created this address for  
1815 itself) and is used however the implementation there wishes (e.g. it can be used to distinguish  
1816 a particular program object, or to relay on, perhaps over a different protocol). The multiple  
1817 members of the set allow support of multiple carrier bindings (including both different  
1818 versions of standard bindings and proprietary bindings) and for relocation of the BTP actor.

1819

1820 When a message is actually to be sent, the sender, possessing the set of addresses for the  
1821 destination, chooses one - restricting its choice to bindings that it supports obviously, but not  
1822 otherwise constrained by the specification. The binding address will be used by the senders  
1823 carrier implementation (depending on the protocol, the address may or may not be transmitted  
1824 – with http, for example, it is), The additional information, if present, will be included in the  
1825 BTP message. The chosen address is considered the “target-address” when considering the  
1826 abstract message, but only the additional information will normally appear within the  
1827 encoded BTP-message (the encoding used is part of the binding specification, which could  
1828 require that all of the address is (redundantly) transmitted, if the specifier so chose).

1829

1830 Where a BTP message invokes a reply – as with the Initiator:Factory, Terminator:Decider  
1831 and Status Requestor:various roles – the receiver (Factory, Decider, etc) of the message will  
1832 not know *a priori* the address of the sender. Accordingly, in these cases the abstract messages  
1833 are specified as containing a single “reply-address”. Depending on the binding, and the  
1834 particular use of the binding, the “reply-address” may be directly represented in the encoding

1835 of the BTP message, or may be implicit in the carrier protocol. Similar considerations apply  
1836 in the Superior:Inferior relationship, where although the addresses are normally known by the  
1837 other side, there are cases when a message is received, and must be responded to, but the peer  
1838 is unknown. Accordingly, the Superior:Inferior messages contain (in abstract) a single  
1839 “senders-address”. As with the the “reply-address”es, it may be implicit in the carrier  
1840 protocol.

1841  
1842 The CONTEXT message does not contain a “target-address”, even as an abstract message, as  
1843 it is never transmitted between BTP actors on its own – it is always either related to a BTP  
1844 BEGIN or BEGUN message, or is passed between application elements with some  
1845 (application-detailed) association with application messages.  
1846

### 1847 **Qualifiers**

1848 Qualifiers are elements of the BTP messages used to exchange additional information  
1849 between the actors. Qualifiers can be specified in the BTP specification (“standard  
1850 qualifiers”), by industry groups, by BTP implmentors or for the purposes of particular  
1851 applications. Of the standard qualifiers in this version of the specification some are  
1852 constraints on the BTP contract, such as time limits, and some are further identifiers used to  
1853 distinguish specific parties in the BTP interchange. Non-standard qualifiers could extend the  
1854 protocol or carry application-specific information.  
1855

## 1856 **Part 2. Normative Specification of BTP**

1857

### 1858 **Actors, Roles and Relationships**

1859

1860 Actors are software agents which process computations. BTP actors are addressable for the  
1861 purposes of receiving application and BTP protocol messages transmitted over some  
1862 underlying communications or carrier protocol. (See section “Addressing” for more detail.)  
1863

1864 BTP actors play roles in the sending, receiving and processing of messages. These roles are  
1865 associated with responsibilities or obligations under the terms of software contracts defined  
1866 by this specification. (These contracts are stated formally in the sections entitled “Abstract  
1867 Messages and Associated Contracts” and “State Tables”.) A BTP actor’s computations put  
1868 the contracts into effect.  
1869

1870 A role is defined and described in terms of a single business transaction. An implementation  
1871 supporting a role may, as an addressable entity, play the same role in multiple business  
1872 transactions, simultaneously or consecutively, or a separate addressable entity may be created  
1873 for each transaction. This is a choice for the implementer, and the addressing mechanisms  
1874 allow interoperation between implementations that make different choices.  
1875

1876 Within a single transaction, one actor may play several roles, or each role may be assigned to  
1877 a distinct actor. This is again a choice for the implementer. An actor playing a role is termed  
1878 an “actor-in-role”.  
1879

1880 Actors may interoperate, in the sense that the roles played by actors may be implemented  
1881 using software created by different vendors for each actor-in-role. The section  
1882 “Conformance”, gives guidelines on the groups of roles that may be implemented in a  
1883 partial, interoperable implementation of BTP.  
1884

1885 The descriptions of the roles concentrate on the normal progression of a business transaction,  
1886 and some of the more important divergences from this. They do not cover all exception cases  
1887 – the message set definition and the state tables provide a more comprehensive specification.  
1888

---

1889 Note – A BTP role is approximately equivalent to an interface in some  
1890 distributed computing mechanisms, or a port-type in WSDL. The definition  
1891 of a role includes behaviour.

---

1892

## 1893 **Relationships**

1894

1895 There are two primary relationships in BTP.

1896  Between an application element that determines that a business transaction should be  
1897 completed (the role of Terminator) and the BTP actor at the top of the transaction tree  
1898 (the role of Decider);

1899

1900  Between BTP actors within the tree, where one (the Superior) will inform the other  
1901 (the Inferior) what the outcome decision is.

1902

1903 These primary relationships are involved in arriving at a decision on the outcome of a  
1904 business transaction, and propagating that decision to all parties to the transaction. Taking the  
1905 path that is followed when a business transaction is confirmed:

1906 1. The Terminator determines that the business transaction should confirm, if it can; or  
1907 (for a Cohesion), which parts should confirm

1908 2. The Terminator asks the Decider to apply the desired outcome to the tree, if it can  
1909 guarantee the consistency of the confirm decision

1910 3. The Decider, which is Superior to one or more Inferiors, asks its Inferiors if they can  
1911 agree to a confirm decision (for a Cohesion, this may not be all the Inferiors)

1912 4. If any of those Inferiors are also Superiors, they ask their Inferiors and so on down  
1913 the tree

1914 5. Inferiors that are not Superiors report if they can agree to a confirm to their Superior

1915 6. Inferiors that are also Superiors report their agreement only if they received such  
1916 agreement from their Inferiors, and can agree themselves

1917 7. Eventually agreement (or not) is reported to the Decider. If all have agreed, the  
1918 Decider makes and persists the confirm decision (hence the term “Decider” – it

- 1919 decides, everything else just asked); if any have disagreed, or if the confirm decision  
1920 cannot be persisted, a cancel decision is made
- 1921 8. The Decider, as Superior tells its Inferiors of the outcome
- 1922 9. Inferiors that are also Superiors tell their Inferiors, recursively down the tree
- 1923 10. The Decider replies to the Terminator's request to confirm, reporting the outcome  
1924 decision

1925

1926 There are other relationships that are secondary to Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior,  
1927 mostly involved in the establishment of the primary relationships. The various particular  
1928 relationships can be grouped as the "control" relationships – primarily Terminator:Decider,  
1929 but also Initiator:Factory; and the "outcome" relationships – primarily Superior:Inferior, but  
1930 also Enroller:Superior.

1931

1932 The two groups of relationships are linked in that a Decider is a Superior to one or more  
1933 Inferiors. There are also similarities in the semantics of some of the exchanges (messages)  
1934 within the relationships. However they differ in that

1935

- 1936 1. All exchanges between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator (it is  
1937 essentially a request/response relationship); either of Superior or Inferior may initiate  
1938 messages to the other
- 1939 2. The Superior:Inferior relationship is recoverable – depending on the progress of the  
1940 relationship, the two sides will re-establish their shared state after failure; the  
1941 Terminator:Decider relationship is not recoverable
- 1942 3. The nature of the Superior:Inferior relationship requires that the two parties know of  
1943 each other's addresses from when the relationship is established; the Decider does not  
1944 need to know the address of the Terminator (provided it has some way of returning  
1945 the response to a received message).

1946

1947

1948

1949

## Roles

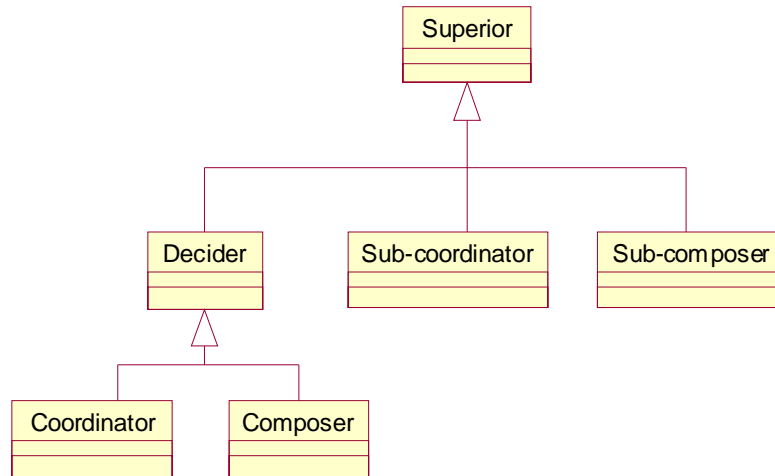
1950

1951 [Figure 15](#)~~Figure 1~~ and [Figure 16](#)~~Figure 2~~ show the BTP roles that are specialisations of the

1952 central Superior and Inferior roles.

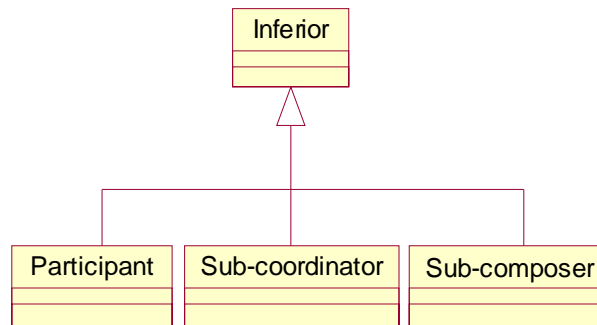
1953





1954  
1955  
1956

**Figure 151 Superior and derived roles**



1957  
1958

**Figure 162 Inferior and derived roles**

1959  
1960  
1961  
1962  
1963  
1964  
1965  
1966  
1967  
1968

In the following sections, the responsibility of each role is defined, and the messages that are sent or received by that role are listed. Note that some roles exist only to have a name for an actor that issues a message and receives a reply to that message. Some of these roles may be played by several actors in the course of a single business transaction.

For each role, a table shows which messages are received and sent. Where the messages appear on the same line, the second is a reply to the first. (Consequently the columns are sometimes sent first, received second, sometimes vice versa.)

1969  
1970  
1971  
1972  
1973  
1974

### **Roles involved in the outcome relationships**

#### **Superior**

Accepts enrolments of Inferiors from Enrollers, establishing a Superior:Inferior relationship with each. In cooperation with other actors and constrained by the messages exchanged with

1975 the Inferior, the Superior determines the **Outcome** applicable to the Inferior and informs the  
 1976 Inferior by sending CONFIRM or CANCEL. This outcome can be confirm only if a  
 1977 PREPARED message is received from the Inferior, and if a record, identifying the Inferior  
 1978 can be persisted. (Whether this record is also a record of a confirm decision depends on the  
 1979 Superior’s position in the business transaction as a whole.). The Superior must retain this  
 1980 persistent record until it receives a CONFIRMED (or, in exceptional cases, CANCELLED or  
 1981 HAZARD) from the Inferior.

1982  
 1983 A Superior may delegate the taking of the confirm or cancel decision to an Inferior, if there is  
 1984 only one Inferior, by sending CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE.

1985  
 1986 A Superior may be *Atomic* or *Cohesive*; an Atomic Superior will apply the same decision to  
 1987 all of its Inferiors; a Cohesive Superior may apply confirm to some Inferiors and cancel to  
 1988 others, or may confirm some after others have reported cancellation. The set of Inferiors that  
 1989 the Superior confirms (or attempts to confirm) is called the “confirm-set”.

1990  
 1991 If RESIGN is received from an Inferior, the Superior:Inferior relationship is ended; the  
 1992 Inferior has no further effect on the behaviour of the Superior as a whole.

1993

Superior receives	Superior sends
ENROL	ENROLLED
	PREPARE
	CONFIRM
	CANCEL
	RESIGNED
	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE
	CONTRADICTION
	SUPERIOR_STATE
PREPARED	
CONFIRMED	
CANCELLED	
HAZARD	
RESIGN	
INFERIOR_STATE	
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1994

1995

1996 Receipt of ENROL establishes a new Superior:Inferior relationship (unless the ENROL is a  
 1997 duplicate). ENROLLED is sent only if a reply is asked for on the ENROL.

1998 **Inferior**

1999

2000 Responsible for applying the Outcome to some set of associated operations – the application  
 2001 determines which operations are the responsibility of a particular Inferior.

2002

2003 An Inferior is **Enrolled** with a single Superior (hereafter referred to as “its Superior”),  
 2004 establishing a Superior:Inferior relationship. If the Inferior is able to ensure that either a

2005 confirm or cancel decision can be applied to the associated operations, and can persist  
 2006 information to retain that condition, it sends a PREPARED message to the Superior. When  
 2007 the Outcome is received from the Superior, the Inferior applies it, deletes the persistent  
 2008 information, and replies with CANCELLED or CONFIRMED as appropriate.

2009  
 2010 If an Inferior is unable to come to a prepared state, it cancels the associated operations and  
 2011 informs the Superior with a CANCELLED message. If it is unable to either come to a  
 2012 prepared state, or to cancel the associated operations, it informs the Superior with a  
 2013 HAZARD message.

2014  
 2015 An Inferior that has become prepared may, exceptionally, make an autonomous decision to be  
 2016 applied to the associated operations, without waiting for the Outcome from the Superior. It is  
 2017 required to persist this autonomous decision and report it to the Superior with CONFIRMED  
 2018 or CANCELLED as appropriate. If, when CONFIRM or CANCEL is received, the  
 2019 autonomous decision and the decision received from the Superior are contradictory, the  
 2020 Inferior must retain the record of the autonomous decision until receiving a  
 2021 CONTRADICTION message.  
 2022

Inferior receives	Inferior sends
PREPARE	
CONFIRM	
CANCEL	
RESIGNED	
CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE	
CONTRADICTION	
SUPERIOR_STATE	
	PREPARED
	CONFIRMED
	CANCELLED
	HAZARD
	RESIGN
	INFERIOR_STATE
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2023  
 2024  
 2025  
 2026  
 2027  
 2028  
 2029  
 2030  
 2031  
 2032  
 2033

### Enroller

Causes the enrolment of an Inferior with a Superior. This role is distinguished because in some implementations the enrolment request will be performed by the application, in some the application will ask the actor that will play the role of Inferior to enrol itself, and a Factory may enrol a new Inferior (which will also be Superior) as a result of receiving BEGIN&CONTEXT.

Enroller sends	Enroller receives
ENROL	ENROLLER

2034 ENROLLED is received only if the Enroller asked for a response when the ENROL was sent.  
2035  
2036 An ENROL message sent from an Enroller that did not require an ENROLLED response may  
2037 be modified *en route* to the Superior by an intermediate actor to ask for an ENROLLED  
2038 response to be sent to the intermediate. (This may occur in the “one-shot” scenario, where an  
2039 ENROL/no-rsp-req is received in relation to a CONTEXT\_REPLY/related; the receiver of  
2040 the CONTEXT\_REPLY will need to ensure the enrolment is successful).

2041  
2042 **Participant**

2043  
2044 An Inferior which is specialized for the purposes of an application. Some application  
2045 operations are associated directly with the Participant, which is responsible for determining  
2046 whether a prepared condition is possible for them, and for applying the outcome. (“associated  
2047 directly” as opposed to involving another BTP Superior:Inferior relationship, in which this  
2048 actor is the Superior).

2049  
2050 The associated operations may be performed by the actor that has the role of Participant, or  
2051 they may be performed by another actor, and only the confirm/cancel application is  
2052 performed by the Participant.

2053  
2054 In either case, the Participant, as part of becoming prepared (i.e. before it can send  
2055 PREPARED to the Superior), will persist information allowing it apply a confirm decision to  
2056 the operations and to apply a cancel decision. The nature of this information depends on the  
2057 operations.

---

2058 Note – Possible approaches are:

---

- 2059 o The operations may be performed completely and the  
2060 Participant persists information to perform counter-effect  
2061 operations (compensating operations) to apply  
2062 cancellation;
  - 2063 o The operations may be just checked and not performed at  
2064 all; the Participant persists information to perform them to  
2065 apply confirmation;
  - 2066 o The Participants persists the prior state of data affected by  
2067 the operations and the operations are performed; the  
2068 Participant restores the prior state to apply cancellation;
  - 2069 o As the previous, but other access to the affected data is  
2070 forbidden until the decision is known
- 

2071  
2072 Since a Participant is an Inferior, it sends and receives the messages for an Inferior.  
2073

2074  
2075  
2076  
2077  
2078  
2079  
2080  
2081  
2082  
2083  
2084  
2085  
2086  
2087  
2088  
2089  
2090  
2091  
2092  
2093  
2094  
2095  
2096  
2097  
2098  
2099  
2100  
2101  
2102  
2103  
2104  
2105  
2106  
2107  
2108  
2109  
2110  
2111  
2112  
2113  
2114  
2115  
2116  
2117  
2118  
2119  
2120

### **Sub-coordinator**

An Inferior which is also an Atomic Superior.

A sub-coordinator is the Inferior in one Superior:Inferior relationship and the Superior in one or more Superior:Inferior relationships.

From the perspective of its Superior (the one the sub-coordinator is Inferior to), there is no difference between a sub-coordinator and any other Inferior. From this perspective, the “associated operations” of the sub-coordinator as an Inferior include the relationships with its Inferiors.

A sub-coordinator does not become prepared (and send PREPARED to its Superior) until and unless it has received PREPARED (or RESIGN) from all its Inferiors. The outcome is propagated to all Inferiors.

Since a Sub-coordinator is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages for both.

### **Sub-composer**

An Inferior which is also a Cohesive Superior.

Like a sub-coordinator, a sub-composer cannot be distinguished from any other Inferior from the perspective of its Superior.

A sub-composer is similar to a sub-coordinator, except that the constraints linking the different Inferiors concern only those Inferiors in the confirm-set. How the confirm-set is controlled, and when, is not defined in this specification.

If the sub-composer is instructed to cancel, by receiving a CANCEL message from its Superior, the cancellation is propagated to all its Inferiors.

Since a Sub-composer is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages for both.

## **Roles involved in the control relationships**

### **Decider**

A Superior that is not also the Inferior on a Superior:Inferior relationship. It is the top-node in the transaction tree and receives requests from a Terminator as to the desired outcome for the business transaction. If the Terminator asks the Decider to confirm the business transaction, it is the responsibility of the Decider to finally take the confirm decision. The taking of the decision is synonymous with the persisting of information identifying the Inferiors that are to be confirmed. An Inferior cannot be confirmed unless PREPARED has been received from it.

2121 A Decider is instructed to cancel by receiving CANCEL\_TRANSACTION.  
 2122  
 2123 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior (all Inferiors will have the same outcome) is a  
 2124 Coordinator. A Decider that is a Cohesive Superior (some Inferiors may cancel, some  
 2125 confirm) is a Cohesion.  
 2126

<b>Decider receives</b>	<b>Decider sends</b>
CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2127  
 2128 A Decider is also a Superior and thus sends and receives the messages for a Superior.  
 2129  
 2130

### 2131 **Coordinator**

2132  
 2133 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior. The same outcome decision will be applied to all  
 2134 Inferiors (excluding any from which RESIGN is received).  
 2135  
 2136 PREPARED must be received from all remaining Inferiors for a confirm decision to be taken.  
 2137

2138 A Coordinator must make a cancel decision if  
 2139 it is instructed to cancel by the Terminator  
 2140 if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior  
 2141 if it is unable to persist a confirm decision  
 2142

2143 Since a Coordinator is a Decider, it receives the messages appropriate for a Decider and a  
 2144 Superior.  
 2145

### 2146 **Composer**

2147  
 2148 A Decider that is a Cohesive Superior. If the Terminator requests confirmation of the  
 2149 Cohesion, that request will determine the confirm-set of the Cohesion.  
 2150  
 2151 PREPARED must be received from all Inferiors in the confirm-set (excluding any from  
 2152 which RESIGN is received) for a confirm decision to be taken.  
 2153  
 2154 A Composer must make a cancel decision (applying to all Inferiors) if  
 2155 it is instructed to cancel by the Terminator  
 2156 if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior in the confirm-set  
 2157 if it is unable to persist a confirm decision  
 2158  
 2159 A Composer may be asked to prepare some or all of its Inferiors by receiving  
 2160 PREPARE\_INFERIORS. It issues PREPARE to any of those Inferiors from which none of

2161 PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN have been received, and replies to the  
 2162 PREPARE\_INFERIORS with INFERIOR\_STATUSES.  
 2163  
 2164 A Composer may be asked to cancel some of its Inferiors, but not itself, by receiving  
 2165 CANCEL\_INFERIORS.  
 2166

Composer receives	Composer sends
PREPARE_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2167  
 2168

### Terminator

2169  
 2170  
 2171 Asks a Decider to confirm the business transaction, or instructs it to cancel all or (for a  
 2172 Cohesion) part of the business transaction.

2173  
 2174 All communications between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator. A  
 2175 Terminator is usually an application element.  
 2176

2177 A request to confirm is made by sending CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION to the target Decider.  
 2178 If the Decider is a Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may select which of the Composer's  
 2179 Inferiors are to be included in the confirm-set. If the Decider is an Atom Coordinator, all  
 2180 Inferiors are included. After applying the decision, the Decider replies with  
 2181 TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED, TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED or (in the case of  
 2182 problems) INFERIOR\_STATUSES.  
 2183

2184 A Terminator may ask a Composer (but not a Coordinator) to prepare some or all of its  
 2185 Inferiors with PREPARE\_INFERIORS. The Composer replies with  
 2186 INFERIOR\_STATUSES.  
 2187

2188 A Terminator may send CANCEL\_TRANSACTION to instruct the Decider to cancel the  
 2189 whole business transaction.. The Decider replies with CANCEL\_COMPLETE if all Inferiors  
 2190 cancel successfully, and with INFERIOR\_STATUSES in the case of problems.. If the  
 2191 Decider is a Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may send CANCEL\_INFERIORS to cancel  
 2192 some of the Inferiors; the Decider always replies with INFERIOR\_STATUSES.  
 2193

2194 A Terminator may check the status of the Inferiors of the Decider by sending  
 2195 REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES. The Decider replies with INFERIOR\_STATUSES.  
 2196

Terminator sends	Terminator receives
CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
PREPARE_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	INFERIOR_STATUSES
---------------------------	-------------------

2197  
2198  
2199  
2200  
2201  
2202

### Initiator

Requests a **Factory** to create a Superior – this will either be a Decider (representing a new top-level business transaction) or a sub-coordinator or sub-composer to be the Inferior of an existing business transaction.

Initiator sends	Initiator receives
BEGIN	BEGUN & CONTEXT
BEGIN & CONTEXT	BEGUN & CONTEXT

2203  
2204  
2205  
2206  
2207  
2208  
2209  
2210  
2211  
2212  
2213  
2214  
2215

The received CONTEXT is that for the new Superior.

### Factory

Creates Superiors and returns the CONTEXT for the new Superior. The following types of Superior are created :

- Decider, which is either
- Composer or
- Coordinator
- Sub-composer
- Sub-coordinator

Factory receives	Factory sends
BEGIN	BEGUN & CONTEXT
BEGIN & CONTEXT	BEGUN & CONTEXT

2216  
2217  
2218  
2219  
2220  
2221  
2222  
2223  
2224  
2225

If the BEGIN has no related CONTEXT, the Factory creates a Decider, either a Cohesion Composer or an Atom Coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the BEGIN.

If the BEGIN has a related CONTEXT, the new Superior is also enrolled as an Inferior of the Superior identified by the CONTEXT. The new Superior is thus a sub-composer or sub-coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the BEGIN.

### Other roles

2226  
2227  
2228  
2229  
2230  
2231  
2232  
2233  
2234  
2235

#### Redirector

Sends a REDIRECT message to inform a Superior or Inferior that an address previously supplied for the peer (i.e. an Inferior or Superior, respectively) is no longer appropriate, and to supply a new address or set of addresses to replace the old one.

A Redirector may send a REDIRECT message in response to receiving a message using the old address, or may send REDIRECT at its own initiative.



2236  
 2237 If a Superior moves from the superior-address in its CONTEXT, or an Inferior moves from  
 2238 the inferior-address in the ENROL message, the implementation **must** ensure that a  
 2239 Redirector catches any inbound messages using the old address and replies with a  
 2240 REDIRECT message giving the new address. (Note that the inbound message may itself be a  
 2241 REDIRECT message, in which case the Redirector shall use the new address in the received  
 2242 message as the target for the REDIRECT that it sends.)

2243  
 2244 After receiving a REDIRECT message, the BTP actor **must** use the new address not the old  
 2245 one, unless failure prevents it updating its information.  
 2246

Redirector receives	Redirector sends
Any message for Superior or Inferior	REDIRECT

2247  
 2248 **Status Requestor**

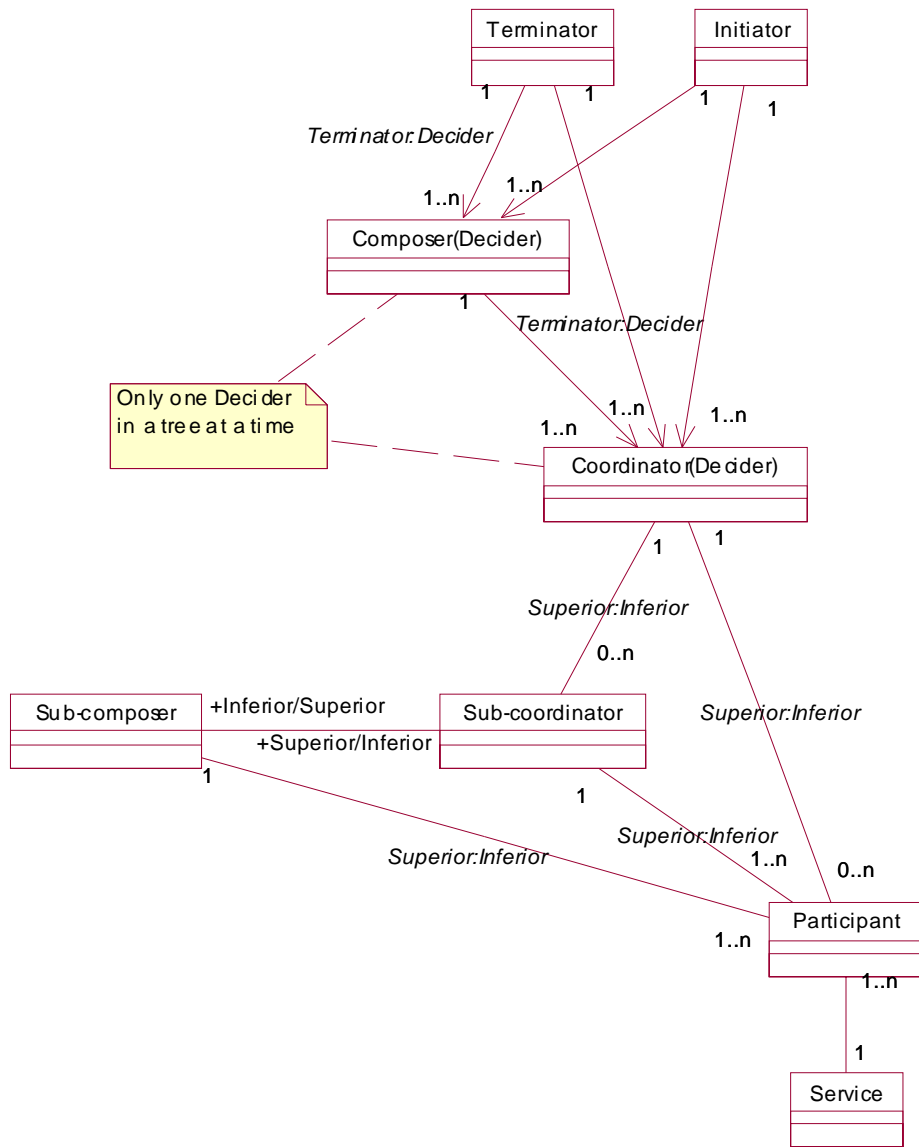
2249  
 2250 Requests and receives the current status of a transaction tree node – any of an Inferior,  
 2251 Superior or Decider, or the current status of the nodes relationships with its Inferiors, if any.  
 2252 The role of Status Requestor has no responsibilities – it is just a name for where the  
 2253 REQUEST\_STATUS and REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES comes from  
 2254 (REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES is also issued by a Terminator to a Decider).  
 2255

Status Requestor sends	Status Requestor receives
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2256  
 2257 The receiver of the request can refuse to provide the status information by replying with  
 2258 FAULT(StatusRefused). The information returned in STATUS will always relate to the  
 2259 transaction tree node as a whole (e.g. as an Inferior, even if it is also a Superior).  
 2260

2261 **Summary of relationships**

2262  
 2263 [Figure 17](#)~~Figure 3~~ summarises the relationships between the BTP roles. BTP can be  
 2264 implemented using proprietary equivalents of the Terminator and Decider roles.



2265  
 2266  
 2267

Figure 173 Summary of relationships between roles

2268  
2269  
2270  
2271  
2272  
2273  
2274  
2275  
2276  
2277  
2278  
2279  
2280  
2281  
2282  
2283  
2284  
2285  
2286  
2287  
2288  
2289  
2290  
2291  
2292  
2293  
2294  
2295  
2296  
2297  
2298  
2299  
2300  
2301  
2302  
2303  
2304  
2305  
2306  
2307  
2308  
2309  
2310  
2311  
2312

## Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts

BT Protocol Messages are defined in this section in terms of the abstract information that has to be communicated. These abstract messages will be mapped to concrete messages communicated by a particular carrier protocol (there can be several such mappings defined).

The abstract message set and the associated state table assume the carrier protocol will

- ❑ deliver messages completely and correctly, or not at all (corrupted messages will not be delivered);
  - ❑ report some communication failures, but will not necessarily report all (i.e. not all message deliveries are positively acknowledged within the carrier);
  - ❑ sometimes deliver successive messages in a different order than they were sent;
- and
- ❑ does not have built-in mechanisms to link a request and a response

Note that these assumptions would be met by a mapping to SMTP and more than met by mappings to SOAP/HTTP.

However, when the abstract message set is mapped to a carrier protocol that provides a richer service (e.g. reports all delivery failures, guarantees ordered delivery or offers a request/response mechanism), the mapping can take advantage of these features. Typically in such cases, some of the parameters of an abstract message will be implicit in the carrier mechanisms, while the values of other parameters will be directly represented in transmitted elements.

The abstract messages include **Delivery parameters** that are concerned with the transmission and delivery of the messages as well as **Payload parameters** directly concerned with the progression of the BTP relationships. When bound to a particular carrier protocol and for particular implementation configurations, parts or all of the Delivery parameters may be implicit in the carrier protocol and will not appear in the "on-the-wire" representation of the BTP messages as such. Delivery parameters are defined as being only those parameters that are concerned with the transmission of this message, or of an immediate reply (thus address parameters to be used in repeated later messages and the identifiers of both sender and receiver are Payload parameters). In the tables in this section, Delivery parameters are shown in shaded cells.

## Addresses

All of the messages except CONTEXT have a "target address" parameter and many also have other address parameters. These latter identify the desired target of other messages in the set.

2313 In all cases, the exact value will have been originally determined by the implementation that  
2314 is the target or intended target.

2315  
2316 The detailed format of the address will depend on the particular carrier protocol, but at this  
2317 abstract level is considered to have three parts. The first part, the “binding name”, identifies  
2318 the binding to a particular carrier protocol – some bindings are specified in this document,  
2319 others can be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the “binding address”, is  
2320 meaningful to the carrier protocol itself, which will use it for the communication (i.e. it will  
2321 permit a message to be delivered to a receiver). The third part, “additional information”, is  
2322 not used or understood by the carrier protocol. The “additional information” may be a  
2323 structured value.

2324  
2325 When a message is actually transmitted, the “binding name” of the target address will identify  
2326 which carrier protocol is in use and the “binding address” will identify the destination, as  
2327 known to the carrier protocol. The entire binding address is considered to be “consumed” by  
2328 the carrier protocol implementation. All of it may be used by the sending implementation, or  
2329 some of it may be transmitted in headers, or as part of a URL in the carrier protocol, but then  
2330 used or consumed by the receiving implementation of the carrier protocol to direct the BTP  
2331 message to a BTP-aware entity (BTP-aware in that it is capable of interpreting the BTP  
2332 messages). The “additional information” of the target address will be part of the BTP  
2333 message itself and used in some way by the receiving BTP-aware entity (it could be used to  
2334 route the message on to some other BTP entity). Thus, for the target address, only the  
2335 “additional information” field is transmitted in the BTP message and the “additional  
2336 information” is opaque to parties other than the recipient.

2337  
2338 For other addresses in BTP messages, all three components will be within the message.

2339  
2340 All messages that concern a particular Superior:Inferior relationship have an identifier  
2341 parameter for the target side as well as the target address. This allows full flexibility for  
2342 implementation choices – an implementation can:

- 2343
- 2344 a) Use the same binding address and additional information for multiple business  
2345 transactions, using the identifier parameter to locate the relevant state  
2346 information;
  - 2347 b) Use the same binding address for multiple business transactions and use the  
2348 additional information to locate the information; or
  - 2349 c) Use a different binding address for each business transaction.
- 2350

2351 Which of these choices is used is opaque to the entity sending the message – both parts of the  
2352 address and the identifier originated at the recipient of this message (and were transmitted as  
2353 parameters of earlier messages in the opposite direction).

2354  
2355 BTP recovery requires that the state information for a Superior or Inferior is accessible after  
2356 failure and that the peer can distinguish between temporary inaccessibility and the permanent  
2357 non-existence of the state information. As is explained in “[Error! Reference source not  
2358 found.](#)” below, BTP provides mechanisms – having a set of BTP addresses for some  
2359 parameters, and the REDIRECT message – that make this possible, even if the recovered

2360 state information is on a different address to the original one (as may be the case if case c)  
2361 above is used).  
2362

### 2363 **Request/response pairs**

2364  
2365 Many of the messages combine in pairs as a request and its response. However, in some cases  
2366 the response message is sent without a triggering request, or as a possible response to more  
2367 than one type of request. To allow for this, the abstract message set treats each message as  
2368 standalone; but where a request does expect a reply, a “reply-address” parameter will be  
2369 present. For any message with a reply address parameter, in the case of certain errors, a  
2370 FAULT message will be sent to the reply address instead of the expected reply.  
2371

2372 Between Superior and Inferior the address of the peer is normally known (from the “superior-  
2373 address” on an earlier CONTEXT or the “inferior-address” on a received ENROL). However,  
2374 in some cases a message will be received for a Superior or Inferior that is not known – the  
2375 state information no longer exists. This is not an exceptional condition but occurs when one  
2376 side has either not created or has removed its persistent state in accordance with the  
2377 procedures, but a message has got lost in a failure, and the peer still has state information.  
2378 The response to a message for an unknown (and logically non-existent) Superior is  
2379 SUPERIOR\_STATE/unknown, for an unknown Inferior it is INFERIOR\_STATE/unknown.  
2380 However, since the intended target is unknown, there is no information to locate the peer,  
2381 which sent the undeliverable message. To enable the receiver to reply with the appropriate  
2382 \*\_STATE/unknown, all the messages between Superior and Inferior have a “senders-  
2383 address” parameter. If a FAULT message is to be sent in response to message which (as an  
2384 abstract message) has a “senders-address” parameter, the FAULT message is sent to that  
2385 address.  
2386

---

2387 Note – Both reply-address and senders-address may be absent when the  
2388 carrier protocol itself has a request/response pattern. In these cases, the reply  
2389 or sender address is implicitly that of the sender of the request (and thus the  
2390 destination of a response)

---

### 2391 **Compounding messages**

2392  
2393 BTP messages may be sent in combination with each other, or with other (application)  
2394 messages. There are two cases:

- 2395
- 2396 a) Sending the messages together where the combination has semantic  
2397 significance. One message is said to be “related to” the other – the combination  
2398 is termed a “group”.
  - 2399 b) Sending of the messages where the combination has no semantic significance,  
2400 but is merely a convenience or optimisation. This is termed “bundling” – the  
2401 combination is termed a “bundle”.

2402  
2403 The form A&B is used to refer to a combination (group) where message B is sent in relation  
2404 to A (“relation” is asymmetric). The form A+B is used to refer to A and B bundled together-

2405 the transmission of the bundle "A+B" is semantically identical to the transmission of A  
2406 followed by the transmission of B.  
2407  
2408 Only certain combinations of messages are possible in a group, and the meaning of the  
2409 relation is specifically defined for each such combination in the next section. A particular  
2410 group is treated as a unit for transmission – it has a single target address. This is usually that  
2411 of one of the messages in the group – the specification for the group defines which.  
2412  
2413 A “bundle” of messages may contain both unrelated messages and groups of related  
2414 messages. The only constraint on which messages and groups can be bundled is that all have  
2415 the same binding address, but may have different “additional information” values. (Messages  
2416 within a related group may have different addresses, where the rules of their relatedness  
2417 permit this). Unless constrained by the binding, any messages or groups that are to be sent to  
2418 the same binding address may be bundled – the fact that the binding addresses are the same is  
2419 a necessary and sufficient condition for the sender to determine that the messages can be  
2420 bundled.  
2421  
2422 A particular and important case of related messages is where a BTP CONTEXT message is  
2423 sent related to an application message. In this case, the target of the application message  
2424 defines the destination of the CONTEXT message. The receiving implementation may in fact  
2425 remove the CONTEXT before delivering the application message to the application (Service)  
2426 proper, but from the perspective of the sender, the two are sent to the same place.  
2427 The compounding mechanisms, and the multi-part address structures, support the “one-wire”  
2428 and “one-shot” communication patterns.  
2429  
2430 In “one-wire”, all message exchanges between two sides of a Superior:Inferior relationship,  
2431 including the associated application messages, pass via the same “endpoints”. These  
2432 “endpoints” may in fact be relays, routing messages on to particular actors within their  
2433 domain. The onward routing will require some further addressing, but this has to be opaque to  
2434 the sender. This can be achieved if the relaying endpoint ensures that all addresses for actors  
2435 in its domain have the relay’s address as their binding address, and any routing information it  
2436 will need in its own domain is placed in the additional information. (This may involve the  
2437 relay changing addresses in messages as they pass through it on the way out). On receiving a  
2438 message, it determines the within-domain destination from the received additional  
2439 information (which is thus rewritten) and forwards the message appropriately. The sender is  
2440 unaware of this, and merely sees addresses with the same binding address, which it is  
2441 permitted to bundle. The content of the “additional information” is a matter only for the relay  
2442 – it could put an entire BTP address in there, or other implementation-defined information.  
2443 Note that a quite different one-wire implementation can be constructed where there is no  
2444 relaying, but the receiving entity effectively performs all roles, using the received identifiers  
2445 to locate the appropriate state.  
2446  
2447 “One-shot” communication makes it possible to send an application message, receive the  
2448 application reply, enrol an Inferior to be responsible for the confirm/cancel of the operations  
2449 of those message and inform the Superior that the Inferior is prepared, all in one two-way  
2450 exchange across the network (e.g. one request/reply of a carrier protocol).. The application  
2451 request is sent with a related CONTEXT message. The application response is sent with a

2452 relation group of CONTEXT\_REPLY/related, ENROL/no-rsp-req message and a  
2453 PREPARED message. This is possible even if the Superior address is different from the  
2454 address of the application element that sends the original message (if the application  
2455 exchange is request/reply, there may not even be an identifiable address for the application  
2456 element). The target addresses of the ENROL and PREPARED (the Superior address) are not  
2457 transmitted; the actor that was originally responsible for adding the CONTEXT to the  
2458 outbound application message remembers the Superior address and forwards the ENROL and  
2459 PREPARED appropriately.

2460  
2461 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single application  
2462 message, there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each sent related to the  
2463 CONTEXT\_REPLY. If an operation fails, a CANCELLED message is sent instead of a  
2464 PREPARED.

2465  
2466 If the CONTEXT has “superior-type” of “atom”, then subsequent messages to the same  
2467 Service, with the same related CONTEXT/atom, can have their associated operations put  
2468 under the control of the same Inferior, and only a CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed is sent back  
2469 with the response (if the new operations fail, it will be necessary to send back  
2470 CONTEXT\_REPLY/repudiated, or send CANCELLED). If the “superior type” on the  
2471 CONTEXT is “cohesive”, each operation will require separate enrolment.

2472  
2473 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the  
2474 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained  
2475 by the application or by the binding in use.  
2476

## 2477 **Extensibility**

2478  
2479 To simplify interoperation between implementations of this edition of BTP with  
2480 implementations of future editions, the “must-be-understood” sub-parameter as specified for  
2481 Qualifiers may be defined for use with any parameter added to an existing message in a future  
2482 revision of this specification. The default for “must-be-understood” shall be “true”, so an  
2483 implementation receiving an unrecognised parameter without a “false” value for “must-be-  
2484 understood” shall not accept it (the FAULT value “UnrecognisedParameter” is available, but  
2485 other errors, including lower-layer parsing/unmarshalling errors may be reported instead). If  
2486 “must-be-understood” with the value “false” is present as a sub-parameter of a parameter in  
2487 any message, a receiving implementation **should** ignore the parameter.

2488  
2489 How the sub-parameter is associated with the new parameter is determined by the particular  
2490 binding.

2491  
2492 No special mechanism is provided to allow for the introduction of completely new messages.  
2493

## 2494 **Messages**

2495  
2496 **Qualifiers**  
2497

2498 All messages have a Qualifiers parameter which contains zero or more Qualifier values. A  
2499 Qualifier has sub-parameters:  
2500

Sub-parameter	Type
qualifier name	string
qualifier group	URI
must-be-understood	Boolean
to-be-propagated	Boolean
content	Arbitrary – depends on type

2501  
2502 **Qualifier group** ensures the Qualifier name is unambiguous. Qualifiers in the  
2503 same group need not have any functional relationship. The qualifier group will  
2504 typically be used to identify the specification that defines the qualifier’s meaning  
2505 and use. Qualifiers may be defined in this or other standard specifications, in  
2506 specifications of a particular community of users or of implementations or by  
2507 bilateral agreement.

2508  
2509 **Qualifier name** this identifies the meaning and use of the Qualifier, using a name  
2510 that is unambiguous within the scope of the Qualifier group.

2511  
2512 **Must-be-understood** if this has the value “true” and the receiving entity does  
2513 not recognise the Qualifier type (or does not implement the necessary  
2514 functionality), a FAULT “UnsupportedQualifier” shall be returned and the  
2515 message shall not be processed. Default is “true”.

2516  
2517 **To-be-propagated** if this has the value “true” and the receiving entity passes the  
2518 BTP message (which may be a CONTEXT, but can be other messages) onwards  
2519 to other entities, the same Qualifier value shall be included. If the value is  
2520 “false”, the Qualifier shall not be automatically included if the BTP message is  
2521 passed onwards. (If the receiving entity does support the qualifier type, it is  
2522 possible a propagated message may contain another instance of the same type,  
2523 even with the same Content – this is not considered propagation of the original  
2524 qualifier.). Default is “false”.

2525  
2526 **Content** the type (which may be structured) and meaning of the content is  
2527 defined by the specification of the Qualifier.

### 2528 2529 2530 **Messages not restricted to outcome or control relationships.**

2531  
2532 The messages in this section are used between various roles. CONTEXT message is used in  
2533 the Initiator:Factory relationship (when it is related to BEGIN or to BEGUN), and related to  
2534 an application ‘message’ to propagate the business transaction between parts of the  
2535 application. CONTEXT\_REPLY is used as the reply to a CONTEXT.REQUEST\_STATUS



2536 can be issued to, and STATUS returned by any of Decider, Superior or Inferior. FAULT can  
2537 be used on any relationship to indicate an error condition back to the sender of a message.  
2538

## 2539 CONTEXT

2540  
2541 A CONTEXT is supplied by (or on behalf of) a Superior and related to one or more  
2542 application messages. (The means by which this relationship is represented is determined by  
2543 the binding and the binding mechanisms of the application protocol.) The “superior-type”  
2544 parameter identifies whether the Superior will apply the same decision to all Inferiors  
2545 enrolled using the same superior identifier (“superior-type” is “atom”) or whether it may  
2546 apply different decisions (“superior-type” is “cohesion”).  
2547

Parameter	Type
superior-address	Set of BTP addresses
superior-identifier	Identifier
superior-type	cohesion/atom
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
reply-address	BTP address

2548  
2549 **superior-address** the address to which ENROL and other messages from an  
2550 enrolled Inferior are to be sent. This can be a set of alternative addresses.  
2551  
2552 **superior-identifier** identifies the Superior. This shall be globally unambiguous.  
2553  
2554 **superior-type** identifies whether the CONTEXT refers to a Cohesion or an  
2555 Atom. Default is atom.  
2556  
2557 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Transaction  
2558 timelimit” is carried by CONTEXT.  
2559  
2560 **reply-address** the address to which a replying CONTEXT\_REPLY is to be sent.  
2561 This may be different each time the CONTEXT is transmitted – it refers to the  
2562 destination of a replying CONTEXT\_REPLY for this particular transmission of  
2563 the CONTEXT.  
2564

2565 There is no “target-address” parameter for CONTEXT as it is only transmitted in relation to  
2566 the application messages, BEGIN and BEGUN.  
2567

2568 The forms CONTEXT/cohesion and CONTEXT/atom refer to CONTEXT messages with the  
2569 “superior-type” with the appropriate value.  
2570  
2571

2572  
2573  
2574  
2575  
2576  
2577  
2578  
2579  
2580  
2581  
2582

## CONTEXT\_REPLY

CONTEXT\_REPLY is sent after receipt of CONTEXT (related to application message(s)) to indicate whether all necessary enrolments have already completed (ENROLLED has been received) or will be completed by ENROL messages sent in relation to the CONTEXT\_REPLY or if an enrolment attempt has failed. CONTEXT\_REPLY may be sent related to an application message (typically the response to the application message related to the CONTEXT). In some bindings the CONTEXT\_REPLY may be implicit in the application message. CONTEXT\_REPLY is used in some of the related groups to allow BTP messages to be sent to a Superior with an application message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
completion-status	complete/related/repudiated
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2583  
2584  
2585  
2586  
2587  
2588

**superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” from the CONTEXT

**completion-status:** reports whether all enrol operations made necessary by the receipt of the earlier CONTEXT message have completed. Values are

Value	meaning
<i>completed</i>	All enrolments (if any) have succeeded already
<i>incomplete</i>	Further enrolments are possible (used only in related groups with other BTP messages)
<i>related</i>	At least some enrolments are to be performed by ENROL messages related to the CONTEXT_REPLY. All other enrolments (if any) have succeeded already.
<i>repudiated</i>	At least one enrolment has failed. The implications of receiving the CONTEXT have <b>not</b> been honoured.

2589  
2590  
2591  
2592  
2593  
2594  
2595  
2596  
2597  
2598  
2599

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the CONTEXT\_REPLY is sent. This shall be the “reply-address” from the CONTEXT.

The form CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed, CONTEXT\_REPLY/related and CONTEXT\_REPLY/repudiated refer to CONTEXT\_REPLY messages with status having the appropriate value. The form CONTEXT\_REPLY/ok refers to either of CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed or CONTEXT\_REPLY/related.

2600 If there are no necessary enrolments (e.g. the application messages related to the received  
2601 CONTEXT did not require the enrolment of any Inferiors), then  
2602 CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed is used.

2603  
2604 If a CONTEXT\_REPLY/repudiated is received, the receiving implementation **must** ensure  
2605 that the business transaction will not be confirmed.

2606  
2607

## 2608 REQUEST\_STATUS

2609  
2610 Sent to an Inferior, Superior or to a Decider to ask it to reply with STATUS. The receiver  
2611 may reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused).

2612

Parameter	Type
target-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

2613

2614 **target identifier** The identifier for the business transaction, or part of business  
2615 transaction whose status is sought. If the target-address is a “decider-address”,  
2616 this parameter shall be the “transaction-identifier” on the BEGUN message. If the  
2617 “target-address” is an “inferior-address”, this parameter shall be the “inferior-  
2618 identifier” on the ENROL message. If the “target-address” is a “superior-  
2619 address”, this parameter shall be the “superior-identifier” on the CONTEXT.

2620

2621 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2622

2623 **target-address** the address to which the REQUEST\_STATUS message is sent.  
2624 This can be any of “decider-address”, “inferior-address” or “superior-address”.

2625

2626 **reply-address** the address to which the replying STATUS should be sent.

2627

2628 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

2629

2630

### *General*

2631

*Redirect* – if the intended target now has a different address

2632

*StatusRefused* – if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the  
sender of this message

2633

2634

*UnknownTransaction* – if the target-identifier is unknown

2635

2636

2637 **STATUS**

2638  
2639  
2640  
2641

Sent by a Inferior, Superior or Decider in reply to a REQUEST\_STATUS, reporting the overall state of the transaction tree node represented by the sender.

Parameter	Type
responders-identifier	Identifier
status	See below
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2642  
2643  
2644  
2645  
2646  
2647  
2648  
2649  
2650  
2651

**responders-identifier** the identifier of the state, identical to the “target-identifier” on the REQUEST\_STATUS.

**status** states the current status of the transaction tree node represented by the sender. Some of the values are only issued if the sender is an Inferior. If the transaction tree node is both Superior and Inferior (i.e. is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer), and two status values would be valid for the current state, it is the sender’s option which one is used.

status value	Meaning from Superior	Meaning from Inferior
<i>Created</i>	Not applicable	The Inferior exists (and is addressable) but it has not been enrolled with a Superior
<i>Enrolling</i>	Not applicable	ENROL has been sent, but ENROLLED is awaited
<i>Active</i>	New enrolment of inferiors is possible	The Inferior is enrolled
<i>Resigning</i>	Not applicable	RESIGN has been sent; RESIGNED is awaited
<i>Resigned</i>	Not applicable	RESIGNED has been received
<i>Preparing</i>	Not applicable	PREPARE has been received; PREPARED has not been sent
<i>Prepared</i>	Not applicable	PREPARED has been sent; no outcome has been received or autonomous decision made
<i>Confirming</i>	Confirm decision has been made or CONFIRM has been received as Inferior but responses from inferiors are pending	CONFIRM has been received; CONFIRMED/response has not been sent

<b>status value</b>	<b>Meaning from Superior</b>	<b>Meaning from Inferior</b>
<i>Confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/responses have been received from all Inferiors	CONFIRMED/response has been sent
<i>Cancelling</i>	Cancel decision has been made but responses from inferiors are pending	CANCEL has been received or auto-cancel has been decided
<i>Cancelled</i>	CANCELLED has been received from all Inferiors	CANCELLED has been sent
<i>cancel-contradiction</i>	Not applicable	Autonomous cancel decision was made, CONFIRM received; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>confirm-contradiction</i>	Not applicable	Autonomous confirm decision was made, CANCEL received; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Hazard</i>	A hazard has been reported from at least one Inferior	A hazard has been discovered; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Contradicted</i>	Not applicable	CONTRADICTION has been received
<i>Unknown</i>	No state information for the target-identifier exists	No state information for the target-identifier exists
<i>Inaccessible</i>	There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined	There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined

2652

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2653

2654

**target-address** the address to which the STATUS is sent. This will be the "reply-address" on the REQUEST\_STATUS message

2655

2656

2657

Types of FAULT possible

2658

2659

### *General*

2660

2661

## **FAULT**

2662

2663

Sent in reply to various messages to report an error condition . The FAULT message is used on all the relationships as a general negative reply to a message.

2664

2665

2666

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
fault-type	See below
fault-data	See below
fault-text	Text string
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2667  
2668  
2669  
2670  
2671  
2672  
2673  
2674  
2675  
2676  
2677  
2678  
2679  
2680

**superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message and as used on the ENROL message (present only if the FAULT is sent to the superior).

**inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message (present only if the FAULT is sent to the inferior)

**fault-type** identifies the nature of the error, as specified for each of the main messages.

**fault-data** information relevant to the particular error. Each “fault-type” defines the content of the “fault-data”:

fault-type	meaning	fault-data
<i>CommunicationFailure</i>	Any fault arising from the carrier mechanism and communication infrastructure.	Determined by the carrier mechanism and binding specification
<i>DuplicateInferior</i>	An inferior with the same address and identifier is already enrolled with this Superior	The identifier
<i>General</i>	Any otherwise unspecified problem	None
<i>InvalidDecider</i>	The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Terminator and transaction identifier)	The address
<i>InvalidInferior</i>	The “inferior-identifier” in the message or at least one “inferior-identifier”s in an “inferior-list” parameter is not known or does not identify a known Inferior	One or more invalid identifiers

	<b>fault-type</b>	<b>meaning</b>	<b>fault-data</b>
2681	<i>InvalidSuperior</i>	The received identifier is not known or does not identify a known Superior	The identifier
	<i>StatusRefused</i>	The receiver will not report the requested status (or inferior statuses) to this StatusRequestor	None
	<i>InvalidTerminator</i>	The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Decider and transaction identifier)	The address
	<i>UnknownParameter</i>	A BTP message has been received with an unrecognised parameter	None
	<i>UnknownTransaction</i>	The transaction-identifier is unknown	The transaction-identifier
	<i>UnsupportedQualifier</i>	A qualifier has been received that is not recognised and on which "must-be-Understood" is "true".	Qualifier group and name
	<i>WrongState</i>	The message has arrived when the recipient or the transaction identified by a related CONTEXT is in an invalid state.	None
	<i>Redirect</i>	The target of the BTP message now has a different address	Set of BTP addresses, to be used instead of the address the BTP message was received on

2682  
2683  
2684  
2685  
2686  
2687  
2688  
2689  
2690  
2691  
2692

**fault-text** Free text describing the fault or providing more information. Whether this parameter is present, and exactly what it contains are an implementation option.

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the FAULT is sent. This may be the "reply-address" from a received message or the address of the opposite side (superior/inferior) as given in a CONTEXT or ENROL message

2693  
2694  
2695

---

Note – If the carrier mechanism used for the transmission of BTP messages is capable of delivering messages in a different order than they were sent in, the "WrongState" FAULT is not sent and should be ignored if received.

---

2696  
2697  
2698  
2699  
2700  
2701  
2702  
2703  
2704  
2705  
2706  
2707  
2708  
2709  
2710  
2711  
2712  
2713  
2714

## REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES, INFERIOR\_STATUSES

REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES may be sent to and INFERIOR\_STATUSES sent from any Decider, Superior or Inferior, asking it to report on the status of its relationships with Inferiors (if any). Since Deciders are required to respond to REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES with INFERIOR\_STATUSES but non-Deciders may just issue FAULT(StatusRefused), and INFERIOR\_STATUSES is also used as a reply to other messages from Terminator to Decider, these messages are described below under the messages used in the control relationships.

### Messages used in the outcome relationships

#### ENROL

A request to a Superior to ENROL an Inferior. This is typically issued after receipt of a CONTEXT message in relation to an application request. The actor issuing ENROL plays the role of Enroller.

Parameter	type
superior-identifier	Identifier
response-requested	Boolean
inferior-address	Set of BTP addresses
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

2715  
2716  
2717  
2718  
2719  
2720  
2721  
2722  
2723  
2724  
2725  
2726  
2727  
2728  
2729

**superior-identifier.** The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

**response-requested** true if an ENROLLED response is required, false otherwise. Default is false.

**inferior-address** the address to which PREPARE, CONFIRM, CANCEL and SUPERIOR\_STATE messages for this Inferior are to be sent.

**inferior-identifier** an identifier that identifies this Inferior. This shall be globally unambiguous..

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior name” may be present.



2730 **target-address** the address to which the ENROL is sent. This will be the  
 2731 “superior-address” from the CONTEXT message.  
 2732  
 2733 **reply-address** the address to which a replying ENROLLED is to be sent, if  
 2734 “response-requested” is true. If this field is absent and “response-requested” is  
 2735 true, the ENROLLED should be sent to the “inferior-address” (or one of them, at  
 2736 sender’s option)

2737  
 2738 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)  
 2739

2740 **General**

2741 **InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2742 **Redirect** – if the Superior now has a different superior-address

2743 **DuplicateInferior** – if inferior with at least one of the set “inferior-  
 2744 address” the same and the same “inferior-identifier” is already enrolled

2745 **WrongState** – if it is too late to enrol new Inferiors (generally if the  
 2746 Superior has already sent a PREPARED message to its superior or  
 2747 terminator, or if it has already issued CONFIRM to other Inferiors).  
 2748

2749 The form ENROL/rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested” having  
 2750 the value “true”; ENROL/no-rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested”  
 2751 having the value “false”  
 2752

2753 ENROL/no-rsp-req is typically sent in relation to CONTEXT\_REPLY/related. ENROL/rsp-  
 2754 req is typically when CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed will be used (after the ENROLLED  
 2755 message has been received.)  
 2756

2757 **ENROLLED**

2758  
 2759 Sent from Superior in reply to an ENROL/rsp-req message, to indicate the Inferior has been  
 2760 successfully enrolled (and will therefore be included in the termination exchanges)  
 2761

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2762  
 2763 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message  
 2764  
 2765 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.  
 2766

2767 **target-address** the address to which the ENROLLED is sent. This will be the  
2768 “reply-address” from the ENROL message (or one of the “inferior-address”s if  
2769 the “reply-address” was empty)  
2770

2771 **sender-address** the address from which the ENROLLED is sent. This is an  
2772 address of the Superior.  
2773

2774 No FAULT messages are issued on receiving ENROLLED.  
2775

## 2776 RESIGN

2777  
2778  
2779 Sent from an enrolled Inferior to the Superior to remove the Inferior from the enrolment. This  
2780 can only be sent if the operations of the business transaction have had no effect as perceived  
2781 by the Inferior.  
2782

2783 RESIGN may be sent at any time prior to the sending of a PREPARED or CANCELLED  
2784 message (which cannot then be sent). RESIGN may be sent in response to a PREPARE  
2785 message.  
2786

Parameter	type
superior-identifier	identifier
inferior-identifier	identifier
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2787  
2788 **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message  
2789

2790 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message  
2791

2792 **response-requested** is set to “true” if a RESIGNED response is required.  
2793 Default is “false”.  
2794

2795 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.  
2796

2797 **target-address** the address to which the RESIGN is sent. This will be the  
2798 superior address as used on the ENROL message.  
2799

2800 **sender-address** the address from which the RESIGN is sent. This is an address  
2801 of the Inferior.  
2802

2803 Note -- RESIGN is equivalent to readonly vote in some other protocols, but can be issued  
2804 early.

2805  
2806 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)  
2807

2808 **General**

2809 **InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2810 **InvalidInferior** – if no ENROL had been received for this “inferior-  
2811 identifier”inferior-

2812 **WrongState** – if a PREPARED or CANCELLED has already been  
2813 received by the Superior from this Inferior  
2814

2815 The form RESIGN/rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with “response-requested” having  
2816 the value “true”; RESIGN /no-rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with “response-  
2817 requested” having the value “false”  
2818

2819

2820 **RESIGNED**

2821

2822 Sent in reply to a RESIGN/rsp-req message.  
2823

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2824

2825 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for  
2826 this Inferior.  
2827

2828 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.  
2829

2830 **target-address** the address to which the RESIGNED is sent. This will be the  
2831 “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.  
2832

2833 **sender-address** the address from which the RESIGNED is sent. This is an  
2834 address of the Superior.  
2835

2836

2837 After receiving this message the Inferior will not receive any more messages with this  
2838 “inferior-identifier”.

2839

2840 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2841

**General**

**WrongState** - if RESIGN has not been sent

2842  
2843  
2844  
2845  
2846  
2847  
2848  
2849  
2850

## PREPARE

Sent from Superior to an Inferior from whom ENROL but neither CANCELLED nor RESIGN have been received, requesting a PREPARED message. PREPARE can be sent after receiving a PREPARED message.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2851  
2852  
2853  
2854  
2855  
2856  
2857  
2858  
2859  
2860  
2861  
2862

**inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Minimal inferior timeout” is carried by PREPARE.

**target-address** the address to which the PREPARE message is sent. This will be the “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

**sender-address** the address from which the PREPARE is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2863  
2864  
2865  
2866

On receiving PREPARE, an Inferior **should** reply with a PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN.

Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2867  
2868  
2869  
2870  
2871  
2872  
2873  
2874

### *General*

**InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown, or an inferior-handle on the inferiors-list is unknown

**WrongState** – if a CONFIRM or CANCEL has already been received by this Inferior.

2875  
2876  
2877  
2878  
2879  
2880

## PREPARED

Sent from Inferior to Superior, either unsolicited or in response to PREPARE, but only when the Inferior has determined the operations associated with the Inferior can be confirmed and can be cancelled, as may be instructed by the Superior. The level of isolation is a local matter (i.e. it is the Inferiors choice, as constrained by the shared understanding of the application

2881  
2882  
2883

exchanges) – other access may be blocked, may see applied results of operations or may see the original state.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
default-is cancel	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2884

**superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2885

2886

**inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2887

2888

**default-is cancel** if “true”, the Inferior states that if the outcome at the Superior is to cancel the operations associated with this Inferior, no further messages need be sent to the Inferior. If the Inferior does not receive a CONFIRM message, it will cancel the associated operations. The value “true” will invariably be used with a qualifier indicating under what circumstances (usually a timeout) an autonomous decision to cancel will be made. If “false”, the Inferior will expect a CONFIRM or CANCEL message as appropriate, even if qualifiers indicate that an autonomous decision will be made.

2889

2890

2891

2892

2893

2894

2895

2896

2897

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior timeout” may be carried by PREPARED.

2898

2899

2900

**target-address** the address to which the PREPARED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on the ENROL message.

2901

2902

2903

**sender-address** the address from which the PREPARED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2904

2905

2906

On sending a PREPARED, the Inferior undertakes to maintain its ability to confirm or cancel the effects of the associated operations until it receives a CONFIRM or CANCEL message. Qualifiers may define a time limit or other constraints on this promise. The “default-is cancel” parameter affects only the subsequent message exchanges and does not of itself state that cancellation will occur.

2907

2908

2909

2910

2911

2912

Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2913

2914

### *General*

2915

*InvalidSuperior* – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2916

2917  
2918  
2919  
2920  
2921  
2922  
2923  
2924  
2925  
2926  
2927  
2928

**InvalidInferior** – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been received from this Inferior

The form PREPARED/cancel refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” = “true”. The unqualified form PREPARED refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” = “false”.

## CONFIRM

Sent by the Superior to an Inferior from whom PREPARED has been received.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2929  
2930  
2931  
2932  
2933  
2934  
2935  
2936  
2937  
2938  
2939  
2940  
2941  
2942  
2943  
2944  
2945  
2946  
2947  
2948  
2949  
2950  
2951  
2952

**inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the CONFIRM message is sent. This will be the “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

**sender-address** the address from which the CONFIRM is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

On receiving CONFIRM, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to undo the operations of associated with the Inferior. The effects of the operations can be made available to everyone (if they weren’t already).

Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

### **General**

**InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

**WrongState** – if no PREPARED has been sent by, or if CANCEL has been received by this Inferior.

2953  
2954  
2955  
2956  
2957  
2958  
2959

## CONFIRMED

Sent after the Inferior has applied the confirmation, both in reply to CONFIRM or when the Inferior has made an autonomous confirm decision, and in reply to a CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE if the Inferior decides to confirm its associated operations.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
confirm-received	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2960  
2961  
2962  
2963  
2964  
2965  
2966  
2967  
2968  
2969  
2970  
2971  
2972  
2973  
2974  
2975  
2976  
2977  
2978  
2979  
2980  
2981  
2982  
2983  
2984  
2985  
2986

**superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.

**inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

**confirm-received** “true” if CONFIRMED is sent after receiving a CONFIRM message; “false” if an autonomous confirm decision has been made and either if no CONFIRM message has been received or the implementation cannot determine if CONFIRM has been received (due to loss of state information in a failure).

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the CONFIRMED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on the CONTEXT message.

**sender-address** the address from which the CONFIRMED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

### *General*

**InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

**InvalidInferior** – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been received from this Inferior.

2987  
2988  
2989  
2990

---

Note – A CONFIRMED message arriving before a CONFIRM message is sent, or after a CANCEL has been sent will occur when the Inferior has taken an autonomous decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The latter will cause a CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)

---

2991  
2992  
2993  
2994  
2995  
2996

The form CONFIRMED/auto refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” = “false”; CONFIRMED/response refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” = “true”.

2997  
2998  
2999  
3000

## CANCEL

Sent by the Superior to an Inferior at any time before (and unless) CONFIRM has been sent.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

3001  
3002  
3003  
3004  
3005  
3006  
3007  
3008  
3009  
3010  
3011  
3012  
3013  
3014  
3015  
3016  
3017  
3018  
3019  
3020  
3021  
3022  
3023

**inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the CANCEL message is sent. This will be the “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

**sender-address** the address from which the CANCEL is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

When received by an Inferior, the effects of any operations associated with the Inferior should be undone. If the Inferior had sent PREPARED, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to confirm the operations.

Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

### *General*

**InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown, or an inferior-handle on the inferiors-list is unknown

**WrongState** – if a CONFIRM has been received by this Inferior.



3024 **CANCELLED**

3025

3026 Sent when the Inferior has applied (or is applying) cancellation of the operations associated  
3027 with the Inferior. CANCELLED is sent from Inferior to Superior in the following cases:

3028

3029

1. before (and instead of) sending PREPARED, to indicate the Inferior is unable to apply the operations in full and is cancelling all of them;

3030

3031

2. in reply to CANCEL, regardless of whether PREPARED has been sent;

3032

3033

3. after sending PREPARED and then making and applying an autonomous decision to cancel.

3034

3035

3036

4. in reply to CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE if the Inferior decides to cancel the associated operations

3037

3038

3039

3040 As is specified in the state tables, cases 1, 2 and 3 are not always distinct in some  
3041 circumstances of recovery and resending of messages.

3042

**Parameter**

superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

3043

**superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.

3044

3045

**inferior-identifier** the inferior identifier as on the earlier ENROL message.

3046

3047

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

3048

3049

**target-address** the address to which the CANCELLED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on the CONTEXT message.

3050

3051

3052

**sender-address** the address from which the CANCELLED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

3053

3054

3055

Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

3056

3057

**General**

3058

**InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

3059

**InvalidInferior** – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been received from this Inferior

3060

3061

3062  
3063

*WrongState* – if CONFIRM has been sent

3064  
3065  
3066  
3067

---

Note – A CANCELLED message arriving before a CANCEL message is sent, or after a CONFIRM has been sent will occur when the Inferior has taken an autonomous decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The latter will cause a CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)

---

3068  
3069

## CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE

3070  
3071  
3072  
3073  
3074  
3075

Sent from a Superior to an enrolled Inferior, when there is only one such enrolled Inferior. In this case the two-phase exchange is not performed between the Superior and Inferior and the outcome decision for the operations associated with the Inferior is determined by the Inferior.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
report-hazard	boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

3076  
3077  
3078  
3079

**inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

3080  
3081  
3082  
3083  
3084  
3085  
3086  
3087

**report hazard** Defines whether the superior wishes to be informed if a mixed condition occurs for the operations associated with the Inferior. If “report-hazard” is “true”, the Inferior will reply with HAZARD if a mixed condition occurs, or if the Inferior cannot determine that a mixed condition has not occurred. If “report-hazard” is false, the Inferior will report only its own decision, regardless of whether that decision was correctly and consistently applied. Default is false.

3088  
3089

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

3090  
3091  
3092

**target-address** the address to which the CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE message is sent This will be the “inferior-address” on the ENROL message.

3093  
3094  
3095

**sender-address** the address from which the CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

3096 CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE can be issued by a Superior to an Inferior from whom  
3097 PREPARED has been received (subject to the requirement that there is only one enrolled  
3098 Inferior).

3099  
3100 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

3101

3102 *General*

3103 *InvalidInferior* – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

3104 *WrongState* – if a PREPARE has already been sent to this Inferior

3105

3106 **HAZARD**

3107

3108 Sent when the Inferior has either discovered a “mixed” condition: that is unable to correctly  
3109 and consistently cancel or confirm the operations in accord with the decision , or when the  
3110 Inferior is unable to determine that a “mixed” condition has not occurred.

3111

3112 HAZARD is also used to reply to a CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE if the Inferior determines there  
3113 is a mixed condition within its associated operations or is unable to determine that there is not  
3114 a mixed condition.

3115

---

3116 Note - If the Inferior makes its own autonomous decision then it signals that  
3117 decision with CONFIRMED or CANCELLED and waits to receive a  
3118 confirmatory CONFIRM or CANCEL, or a CONTRADICTION if the  
3119 autonomous decision by the Inferior was the opposite of that made by the  
3120 Superior.

---

3121

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
level	mixed/possible
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

3122

3123 **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

3124

3125

3126 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message

3127

3128 **level** indicates, with value “mixed” that a mixed condition has definitely  
3129 occurred; or, with value “possible” that it is unable to determine whether a mixed  
3130 condition has occurred or not.

3131  
3132  
3133  
3134  
3135  
3136  
3137  
3138  
3139  
3140  
3141  
3142  
3143  
3144  
3145  
3146  
3147  
3148  
3149  
3150  
3151  
3152  
3153  
3154  
3155  
3156  
3157  
  
3158  
3159  
3160  
3161  
3162  
3163  
3164  
3165  
3166  
3167  
3168  
3169

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the HAZARD is sent. This will be the superior address from the ENROL message.

**sender-address** the address from which the HAZARD is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

*General*

*InvalidSuperior* – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

*InvalidInferior* – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been received from this Inferior

The form HAZARD/mixed refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “mixed”, the form HAZARD/possible refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “possible”.

## CONTRADICTION

Sent by the Superior to an Inferior that has taken an autonomous decision contrary to the decision for the atom. This is detected by the Superior when the ‘wrong’ one of CONFIRMED or CANCELLED is received. CONTRADICTION is also sent in response to a HAZARD message.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

**inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the CONTRADICTION message is sent. This will be the “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

**sender-address** the address from which the CONTRADICTION is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

3170 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

3171

3172 *General*

3173 *InvalidInferior* – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

3174 *WrongState* – if neither CONFIRMED or CANCELLED has been sent  
3175 by this Inferior

3176

3177 **SUPERIOR\_STATE**

3178

3179 Sent by a Superior as a query to an Inferior when

3180

3181 1. in the active state

3182

3183 2. there is uncertainty what state the Inferior has reached (due to recovery from  
3184 previous failure or other reason).

3185

3186 Also sent by the Superior to the Inferior in response to a received INFERIOR\_STATE, in  
3187 particular states.

3188

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
status	<i>see below</i>
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

3189

3190 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for  
3191 this Inferior.

3192

3193 **status** states the current state of the Superior, in terms of its relation to this  
3194 Inferior only.

3195

status value	Meaning
<i>active</i>	The relationship with the Inferior is in the active state from the perspective of the Superior; ENROLLED has been sent, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has not been received (as far as the Superior knows)
<i>prepared-received</i>	PREPARED has been received from the Inferior, but no outcome is yet available
<i>inaccessible</i>	The state information for the Superior, or for its relationship with this Inferior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This

should be a transient condition

*unknown*

The Inferior is not known – it does not exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can treat this as an instruction to cancel any associated operations

3196

3197

**response-requested** true, if SUPERIOR\_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior's initiative; false, if SUPERIOR\_STATE is sent in reply to a received INFERIOR\_STATE or other message. Can only be true if status is active or prepared-received. Default is "false"

3199

3200

3201

3202

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

3203

3204

**target-address** the address to which the SUPERIOR\_STATE message is sent. This will be the "inferior-address" from the ENROL message.

3205

3206

3207

**sender-address** the address from which the SUPERIOR\_STATE is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

3208

3209

3210

The Inferior, on receiving SUPERIOR\_STATE with "response-requested = true, should reply in a timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or by sending INFERIOR\_STATE with the appropriate status value.

3211

3212

3213

3214

A status of unknown shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Superior has no knowledge of the Inferior, or (equivalently) it can be determined that the relationship with the Inferior was cancelled. If there could be persistent information corresponding to the Superior, but it is not accessible from the entity receiving an INFERIOR\_STATE/\*y (or other) message targeted to the Superior or that entity cannot determine whether any such persistent information exists or not, the response shall be Inaccessible.

3215

3216

3217

3218

3219

3220

SUPERIOR\_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than INFERIOR\_STATE/\*y that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known there is no state information for it).

3221

3222

3223

3224

3225

The form SUPERIOR\_STATE/abcd refers to a SUPERIOR\_STATE message status having a value equivalent to "abcd" (for active, prepared-received, unknown and inaccessible) and with "response-requested" = "false". SUPERIOR\_STATE/abcd/y refers to a similar message, but with "response-requested" = "true". The form SUPERIOR\_STATE/\*y refers to a SUPERIOR\_STATE message with "response-requested" = "true" and any value for status.

3226

3227

3228

3229

3230

3231

## INFERIOR\_STATE

3232

3233

Sent by an Inferior as a query when in the active state to a Superior, when (due recovery from previous failure or other reason) there is uncertainty what state the Superior has reached.

3234

3235

3236

3237  
3238  
3239

Also sent by the Inferior to the Superior in response to a received SUPERIOR\_STATE, in particular states.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
status	<i>see below</i>
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

3240  
3241  
3242  
3243  
3244  
3245  
3246  
3247  
3248

**superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as used on the ENROL message

**inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

**status** states the current state of the Inferior for the atomic business transaction, which corresponds to the last message sent to the Superior by (or in the case of ENROL for) the Inferior

status value	meaning/previous message sent
<i>active</i>	The relationship with the Superior is in the active state from the perspective of the Inferior; ENROL has been sent, a decision to send PREPARED has not been made.
<i>inaccessible</i>	The state information for the relationship with the Superior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This should be a transient condition
<i>unknown</i>	The Inferior is not known – it does not exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can be treated as cancelled

3249  
3250  
3251  
3252  
3253  
3254  
3255  
3256  
3257  
3258  
3259

**response-requested** “true” if INFERIOR\_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior’s initiative; “false” if INFERIOR\_STATE is sent in reply to a received SUPERIOR\_STATE or other message. Can only be “true” if “status” is “active” or “prepared-received”. Default is “false”

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the INFERIOR\_STATE is sent. This will be the “target-address” as used the original ENROL message.

3260                    **sender-address** the address from which the INFERIOR\_STATE is sent. This is  
3261 an address of the Inferior.

3262

3263                    The Superior, on receiving INFERIOR\_STATE with “response-requested” = “true”, should  
3264 reply in a timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or  
3265 by sending SUPERIOR\_STATE with the appropriate status value.

3266

3267                    A status of “unknown” shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Inferior  
3268 has no knowledge of a relationship with the Superior. If there could be persistent information  
3269 corresponding to the Superior, but it is not accessible from the entity receiving an  
3270 SUPERIOR\_STATE/\*/\*y (or other) message targetted on the Inferior or the entity cannot  
3271 determine whether any such persistent information exists, the response shall be  
3272 “inaccessible”.

3273

3274                    INFERIOR\_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than  
3275 SUPERIOR\_STATE/\*/\*y that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known  
3276 there is no state information for it).

3277

3278                    A SUPERIOR\_STATE/INFERIOR\_STATE exchange that determines that one or both sides  
3279 are in the active state does not require that the Inferior be cancelled (unlike some other two-  
3280 phase commit protocols). The relationship between Superior and Inferior, and related  
3281 application elements may be continued, with new application messages carrying the same  
3282 CONTEXT. Similarly, if the Inferior is prepared but the Superior is active, there is no  
3283 required impact on the progression of the relationship between them.

3284

3285                    The form INFERIOR\_STATE/abcd refers to a INFERIOR\_STATE message status having a  
3286 value equivalent to “abcd” (for active, unknown and inaccessible) and with “response-  
3287 requested” = “false”. INFERIOR\_STATE/abcd/y refers to a similar message, but with  
3288 “response-requested” = “true”. The form INFERIOR\_STATE/\*/\*y refers to a  
3289 INFERIOR\_STATE message with “response-requested” = “true” and any value for status.

3290

3291

## 3292 REDIRECT

3293

3294                    Sent when the address previously given for a Superior or Inferior is no longer valid and the  
3295 relevant state information is now accessible with a different address (but the same superior or  
3296 “inferior-identifier”).

3297

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
old-address	Set of BTP addresses
new-address	Set of BTP addresses
qualifiers	List of qualifiers



target-address	BTP address
----------------	-------------

3298  
3299  
3300  
3301  
3302  
3303  
3304  
3305  
3306  
3307  
3308  
3309  
3310  
3311  
3312  
3313  
3314  
3315  
3316  
3317  
3318  
3319  
3320  
3321  
3322  
3323  
3324  
3325  
3326  
3327  
3328  
3329  
3330  
3331  
3332  
3333  
3334

**superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message and used on an ENROL message. (present only if the REDIRECT is sent from the Inferior).

**inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

**old-address** The previous address of the sender of REDIRECT. A match is considered to apply if any of the “old-address” values match one that is already known.

**new-address** The (set of alternatives) “new-address” values to be used for messages sent to this entity.

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the REDIRECT is sent. This is the address of the opposite side (superior/inferior) as given in a CONTEXT or ENROL message

If the actor whose address is changed is an Inferior, the “new-address” value replaces the “inferior-address” as present in the ENROL.

If the actor whose address is changed is a Superior, the “new-address” value replaces the Superior address as present in the CONTEXT message (or as present in any other mechanism used to establish the Superior:Inferior relationship).

### Messages used in control relationships

#### BEGIN

A request to a Factory to create a new Business Transaction. This may either be a new top-level transaction, in which case the Composer or Coordinator will be the Decider, or the new Business Transaction may be immediately made the Inferior within an existing Business Transaction (thus creating a sub-Composer or sub-Coordinator).

Parameter	Type
transaction-type	cohesion/atom
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

3335

3336 **transaction-type** identifies whether a new Cohesion or new Atom is to be  
 3337 created; this value will be the “superior-type” in the new CONTEXT  
 3338  
 3339 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Transaction  
 3340 timelimit” may be present on BEGIN, to set the timelimit for the new business  
 3341 transaction and will be copied to the new CONTEXT. The standard qualifier  
 3342 “Inferior name” may be present if there is a CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.  
 3343  
 3344 **target-address** the address of the entity to which the BEGIN is sent. How this  
 3345 address is acquired and the nature of the entity are outside the scope of this  
 3346 specification.  
 3347  
 3348 **reply-address** the address to which the replying BEGUN and related  
 3349 CONTEXT message should be sent.  
 3350  
 3351 A new top-level Business Transaction is created if there is no CONTEXT related to the  
 3352 BEGIN. A Business Transaction that is to be Inferior in an existing Business Transaction is  
 3353 created if the CONTEXT message for the existing Business Transaction is related to the  
 3354 BEGIN. In this case, the Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Composer or  
 3355 Coordinator as an Inferior of the Superior identified in that CONTEXT.  
 3356

---

3357 Note – This specification does not provide a standardised means to  
 3358 determine which of the Inferiors of a sub-Composer are in its confirm set.  
 3359 This is considered part of the application:inferior relationship.

---

3360 The forms BEGIN/cohesion and BEGIN/atom refer to BEGIN with “transaction-type” having  
 3361 the corresponding value.  
 3362

3363 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)  
 3364  
 3365

**General**

3366 **Redirect** – *if the Factory now has a different address*  
 3367 **WrongState** - only issued if there is a related CONTEXT, and the  
 3368 Superior identified by the CONTEXT is in the wrong state to enrol new  
 3369 Inferiors  
 3370

**BEGUN**

3371  
 3372  
 3373  
 3374 BEGUN is a reply to BEGIN. There is always a related CONTEXT, which is the CONTEXT  
 3375 for the new business transaction.  
 3376

Parameter	Type
decider-address	Set of BTP addresses

inferior-address	Set of BTP addresses
transaction-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

3377  
3378  
3379  
3380  
3381  
3382  
3383  
3384  
3385  
3386  
3387  
3388  
3389  
3390  
3391  
3392  
3393  
3394  
3395

**decider-address** for a top-most transaction (no CONTEXT related to the BEGIN), this is the address to which PREPARE\_INFERIORS, CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION, CANCEL\_TRANSACTION, CANCEL\_INFERIORS and REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES messages are to be sent; if a CONTEXT was related to the BEGIN this parameter is absent

**inferior-address** for a non-top-most transaction (a CONTEXT was related to the BEGIN), this is the “inferior-address” used in the enrolment with the Superior identified by the CONTEXT related to the BEGIN. The parameter is optional (implementor’s choice) if this is not a top-most transaction; it shall be absent if this is a top-most transaction.

**transaction-identifier** if this is a top-most transaction, this is an globally-unambiguous identifier for the new Decider (Composer or Coordinator). If this is not a top-most transaction, the transaction-identifier shall be the inferior-identifier used in the enrolment with the Superior identified by the CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.

3396  
3397

---

Note – The “transaction-identifier” may be identical to the “superior-identifier” in the CONTEXT that is related to the BEGUN

---

3398  
3399  
3400

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

3401  
3402  
3403

**target-address** the address to which the BEGUN is sent. This will be the “reply-address” from the BEGIN.

3404  
3405  
3406  
3407  
3408  
3409

At implementation option, the “decider-address” and/or “inferior-address” and the “superior-address” in the related CONTEXT may be the same or may be different. There is no general requirement that they even use the same bindings. Any may also be the same as the “target-address” of the BEGIN message (the identifier on messages will ensure they are applied to the appropriate Composer or Coordinator).

3410  
3411

No FAULT messages are issued on receiving BEGUN.

3412  
3413

### PREPARE\_INFERIORS

3414  
3415

Sent from a Terminator to a Decider, but only if it is a Cohesion Composer, to tell it to prepare all or some of its inferiors, by sending PREPARE to any that have not already sent

3416 PREPARED, RESIGN or CANCELLED to the Decider (Composer) on its relationships as  
 3417 Superior. If the inferiors-list parameter is absent, the request applies to all the inferiors; if the  
 3418 parameter is present, it applies only to the identified inferiors of the Decider (Composer).  
 3419

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

3420  
 3421 **transaction identifier** identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier  
 3422 from the BEGUN message.  
 3423

3424 **inferiors-list** defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider preparation is  
 3425 requested for, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the  
 3426 Decider (in its role as Superior). If this parameter is absent, the PREPARE  
 3427 applies to all Inferiors.  
 3428

3429 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.  
 3430

3431 **target-address** the address to which the PREPARE\_INFERIORS message is  
 3432 sent. This will be the decider-address from the BEGUN message.  
 3433

3434 **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the  
 3435 PREPARE\_INFERIORS message.  
 3436

3437 For all Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (all Inferiors if the parameter is  
 3438 absent), from which none of PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGNED has been received,  
 3439 the Decider shall issue PREPARE. It will reply to the Terminator, using the “reply-address”  
 3440 on the PREPARE\_INFERIORS message, sending an INFERIOR\_STATUSES message  
 3441 giving the status of the Inferiors identified on the inferiors-list parameter (all of them if the  
 3442 parameter was absent).  
 3443

3444 If one or more of the “inferior-identifier”s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not  
 3445 correspond to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an  
 3446 implementation option whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly  
 3447 identified in the "inferiors-list".  
 3448

3449 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address)  
 3450

3451 *General*  
 3452 *InvalidDecider* – if Decider address is unknown  
 3453

3454 *Redirect* – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”  
 3455 *UnknownTransaction* – if the transaction-identifier is unknown  
 3456 *InvalidInferior* – if one or more inferior-handles on the inferiors-list is  
 3457 unknown  
 3458 *WrongState* – if a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION or  
 3459 CANCEL\_TRANSACTION has already been received by this  
 3460 Composer.

3461 The form PREPARE\_INFERIORS/all refers to a PREPARE\_INFERIORS message where  
 3462 the “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form PREPARE\_INFERIORS/specific refers to a  
 3463 PREPARE\_INFERIORS message where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.  
 3464  
 3465  
 3466

### 3467 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION

3468  
 3469 Sent from a Terminator to a Decider to request confirmation of the business transaction. If the  
 3470 business transaction is a Cohesion, the confirm-set is specified by the “inferiors-list”  
 3471 parameter.  
 3472

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
report-hazard	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

3473  
 3474 **transaction-identifier** identifies the Decider. This will be the transaction-  
 3475 identifier from the BEGUN message.  
 3476

3477 **inferiors-list** defines which Inferiors enrolled with the Decider, if it is a  
 3478 Cohesion Composer, are to be confirmed, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on  
 3479 the ENROL received by the Decider (in its role as Superior). Shall be absent if  
 3480 the Decider is an Atom Coordinator.  
 3481

3482 **report-hazard** Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard  
 3483 events and contradictory decisions within the business transaction. If “report-  
 3484 hazard” is “true”, the receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED,  
 3485 CANCELLED or HAZARD) have been received from all of its inferiors,  
 3486 ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If “report-hazard” is “false”, the  
 3487 Decider will reply with TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED or  
 3488 TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED as soon as the decision for the transaction is  
 3489 known.

3490  
3491  
3492  
3493  
3494  
3495  
3496  
3497  
3498  
3499  
3500  
3501  
3502  
3503  
3504  
3505  
3506  
3507  
3508  
  
3509  
3510  
3511  
3512  
3513  
  
3514  
3515  
3516  
3517  
3518  
3519  
3520  
3521  
3522  
3523  
3524  
3525  
3526  
3527  
3528  
3529  
3530  
3531  
3532  
3533

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message is sent. This will be the “decider-address” on the BEGUN message.

**reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message.

If the “inferiors-list” parameter is present, the Inferiors identified shall be the “confirm-set” of the Cohesion. If the parameter is absent and the business transaction is a Cohesion, the “confirm-set” shall be all remaining Inferiors. If the business transaction is an Atom, the “confirm-set” is automatically all the Inferiors.

Any Inferiors from which RESIGN is received are not counted in the confirm-set.

If, for each of the Inferiors in the confirm-set, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has not been received, PREPARE shall be issued to that Inferior.

---

NOTE -- If PREPARE has been sent but PREPARED not yet received from an Inferior in the confirm-set, it is an implementation option whether and when to re-send PREPARE. The Superior implementation may choose to re-send PREPARE if there are indications that the earlier PREPARE was not delivered.

---

A confirm decision may be made only if PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the “confirm-set”. The making of the decision shall be persistent (and if it is not possible to persist the decision, it is not made). If there is only one remaining Inferior in the “confirm set” and PREPARE has not been sent to it, CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE may be sent to it.

All remaining Inferiors that are not in the confirm set shall be cancelled.

If a confirm decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.

If a cancel decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.

If “report-hazard” was “true”, TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED shall be sent to the “reply-address” after CONFIRMED has been received from each Inferior in the confirm-set and CANCELLED or RESIGN from each and any Inferior not in the confirm-set.

If “report-hazard” was “true” and any HAZARD or contradictory message was received (i.e. CANCELLED from an Inferior in the confirm-set or CONFIRMED from an Inferior not in

3534 the confirm-set), an INFERIOR\_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent  
3535 to the “reply-address”.

3536  
3537 If one or more of the "inferior-identifier"s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not  
3538 correspond to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. The Decider  
3539 shall not make a confirm decision and shall not send CONFIRM to any Inferior.

3540  
3541 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

3542  
3543 **General**  
3544 **InvalidDecider** – if Decider address is unknown  
3545 **Redirect** – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”  
3546 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown  
3547 **InvalidInferior** – if one or more inferior handles in the inferiors-list is  
3548 unknown  
3549 **WrongState** – if a CANCEL\_TRANSACTION has already been  
3550 received .

3551  
3552 The form CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION/all refers to a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message  
3553 where the “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form  
3554 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION/specific refers to a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message  
3555 where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.

## 3556 TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED

3557  
3558 A Decider sends TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED to a Terminator in reply to  
3559 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION if all of the confirm-set confirms (and, for a Cohesion, all other  
3560 Inferiors cancel) without reporting hazards, or if the Decider made a confirm decision and the  
3561 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION had a “report-hazards” value of “false”.  
3562  
3563

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

3564  
3565 **transaction-identifier** the “transaction-identifier” as on the BEGUN message  
3566 (i.e. the identifier of the Decider as a whole).

3567  
3568 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

3569  
3570 **target-address** the address to which the TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED is  
3571 sent., this will be the “reply-address” from the CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION  
3572 message

3573  
3574 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “decider-address”)

3575  
3576  
3577  
3578  
3579  
3580  
3581  
3582  
3583  
3584

*General*

*InvalidTerminator* – if Terminator address is unknown

*UnknownTransaction* – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

**CANCEL\_TRANSACTION**

Sent by a Terminator to a Decider at any time before CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION has been sent.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
report-hazard	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

3585  
3586  
3587  
3588  
3589  
3590  
3591  
3592  
3593  
3594  
3595  
3596  
3597  
3598  
3599  
3600  
3601  
3602  
3603  
3604  
3605  
3606  
3607  
3608  
3609  
3610  
3611  
3612

**transaction-identifier** identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.

**report-hazard** Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard events and contradictory decisions within the business transaction. If “report-hazard” is “true”, the receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD) have been received from all of its inferiors, ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If “report-hazard” is “false”, the Decider will reply with TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED immediately.

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

**target-address** the address to which the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION message is sent. This will be the decider-address from the BEGUN message.

**reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION message.

The business transaction is cancelled – this is propagated to any remaining Inferiors by issuing CANCEL to them. No more Inferiors will be permitted to enrol.

If "report-hazard" was "false", a TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED message shall be sent to the "reply-address".

If "report-hazard" was "true" and any HAZARD or CONFIRMED message was received, an INFERIOR\_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent to the "reply-address".



3613  
3614 If "report-hazard" was "true", TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED shall be sent to the "reply-  
3615 address" after CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from each Inferior.

3616  
3617 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address)

3618  
3619 *General*  
3620 *InvalidDecider* – if Decider address is unknown  
3621 *Redirect* – if the Decider now has a different "decider-address"  
3622 *UnknownTransaction* – if the transaction-identifier is unknown  
3623 *WrongState* – if a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION has been received by  
3624 this Composer.

3625  
3626

## 3627 CANCEL\_INFERIORS

3628  
3629 Sent by a Terminator to a Decider, but only if is a Cohesion Composer, at any time before  
3630 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION or CANCEL\_TRANSACTION has been sent.  
3631

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

3632

3633 **transaction-identifier** identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-  
3634 identifier from the BEGUN message.

3635

3636 **inferiors-list** defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider are to be cancelled,  
3637 using the "inferior-identifiers" as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its  
3638 role as Superior).

3639

3640 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

3641

3642 **target-address** the address to which the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION message is  
3643 sent. This will be the decider-address from the BEGUN message.

3644

3645 **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the  
3646 CANCEL\_TRANSACTION message.

3647

3648 Only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list are to be cancelled. Any other inferiors are  
3649 unaffected by a CANCEL\_INFERIORS. Further Inferiors may be enrolled.

3650

3651  
3652  
3653

---

Note – A CANCEL\_INFERIORS for all of the currently enrolled Inferiors will leave the cohesion ‘empty’, but permitted to continue with new Inferiors, if any enrol.

---

3654  
3655  
3656  
3657  
3658  
3659

If one or more of the "inferior-identifier"s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an implementation option whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly identified in the "inferiors-list".

3660  
3661

Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address)

3662

**General**

3663

**InvalidDecider** – if Decider address is unknown

3664

**Redirect** – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”

3665

**UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

3666

**InvalidInferior** – if one or more inferior-handle on the inferiors-list is

3667

unknown

3668

**WrongState** – if a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION or

3669

CANCEL\_TRANSACTION has been received by this Composer.

3670

3671

3672

3673

**TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED**

3674

3675

A Decider sends TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED to a Terminator in reply to CANCEL\_TRANSACTION or in reply to CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION if the Decider decided to cancel. In both cases, TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED is used only if all Inferiors cancelled without reporting hazards or the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION or CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION had a “report-hazard” value of “false.

3676

3677

3678

3679

3680

**Parameter**

transaction-identifier                      identifier

qualifiers                                      List of qualifiers

target-address                                BTP address

3681

3682

**transaction-identifier** the “transaction-identifier” as on the BEGUN message (i.e. the identifier of the Decider as a whole).

3683

3684

3685

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

3686

3687

**target-address** the address to which the TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED is sent. This will be the “reply-address” from the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION or CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message.

3688

3689

3690  
3691 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “decider-address”)  
3692

3693 *General*

3694 *InvalidTerminator* – if Terminator address is unknown

3695 *UnknownTransaction* – if the transaction-identifier is unknown  
3696  
3697

3698 **REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES**  
3699

3700 Sent to a Decider to ask it to report the status of its Inferiors with an INFERIOR\_STATUSES  
3701 message. It can also be sent to any actor with a “superior-address” or “inferior-address”,  
3702 asking it about the status of that transaction tree nodes Inferiors, if there are any. In this latter  
3703 case, the receiver may reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused). If it is prepared to  
3704 reply, but has no Inferiors, it replies with an INFERIOR\_STATUSES with an empty “status-  
3705 list” parameter.  
3706

Parameter	Type
target-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

3707  
3708 **target-identifier** identifies the transaction (or transaction tree node). When the  
3709 message is used to a Decider, this will be the transaction-identifier from the  
3710 BEGUN message. Otherwise it will be the superior-identifier from a CONTEXT  
3711 or an inferior-identifier from an ENROL message.  
3712  
3713 **inferiors-list** defines which inferiors enrolled with the target are to be included  
3714 in the INFERIOR\_STATUSES, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL  
3715 received by the Decider (in its role as Superior). If the list is absent, the status of  
3716 all enrolled Inferiors will be reported.  
3717  
3718 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.  
3719  
3720 **target-address** the address to which the REQUEST\_ STATUS message is sent.  
3721 When used to a Decider, this will be the “decider-address” from the BEGUN  
3722 message. Otherwise it may be a “superior-address” from a CONTEXT or  
3723 “inferior-address” from an ENROL message.  
3724  
3725 **reply-address** the address to which the replying INFERIOR\_STATUSES is to  
3726 be sent  
3727

3728 Types of FAULT possible (sent to reply-address)

3729

3730

**General**

3731

**Redirect** – if the intended target now has a different address

3732

**StatusRefused** – if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the sender of this message. This “fault-type” shall not be issued when a Decider receives REQUES\_STATUSES from the Terminator.

3733

3734

3735

**UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

3736

3737

3738

The form REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES/all refers to a REQUEST\_STATUS with the inferiors-list absent. The form REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUS/specific refers to a REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUS with the inferiors-list present.

3739

3740

3741

**INFERIOR\_STATUSES**

3742

3743

Sent by a Decider to report the status of all or some of its inferiors in response to a REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES, PREPARE\_INFERIORS, CANCEL\_INFERIORS, CANCEL\_TRANSACTION with “report-hazard” value of “true” and CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION with “report-hazard” value of “true”. It is also used by any actor in response to a received REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES to report the status of inferiors, if there are any.

3744

3745

3746

3747

3748

3749

3750

Parameter	Type
responders-identifier	Identifier
status-list	Set of Status items - see below
general-qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

3751

3752

**responders-identifier** the target-identifier used on the REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES.

3753

3754

3755

**status-list** contains a number of Status-items, each reporting the status of one of the inferiors of the Decider. The fields of a Status-item are

3756

3757

Field	Type
inferior-identifier	Inferior-identifier, identifying which inferior this Status-item contains information for.
status	One of the status values below (these are a subset of those for STATUS)

Field	Type
qualifiers	A list of qualifiers as received from the particular inferior or associated with the inferior in earlier messages (e.g. an Inferior name qualifier).

3758  
3759  
3760  
3761

The status value reports the current status of the particular inferior, as known to the Decider (Composer or Coordinator). Values are:

status value	Meaning
<i>active</i>	The Inferior is enrolled
<i>resigned</i>	RESIGNED has been received from the Inferior
<i>preparing</i>	PREPARE has been sent to the inferior, none of PREPARED, RESIGNED, CANCELLED, HAZARD have been received
<i>prepared</i>	PREPARED has been received
<i>autonomously confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/auto has been received, no completion message has been sent
<i>autonomously cancelled</i>	PREPARED had been received, and since then CANCELLED has been received but no completion message has been sent
<i>confirming</i>	CONFIRM has been sent, no outcome reply has been received
<i>confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/response has been received
<i>cancelling</i>	CANCEL has been sent, no outcome reply has been received
<i>cancelled</i>	CANCELLED has been received, and PREPARED was not received previously
<i>cancel-contradiction</i>	Confirm had been ordered (and may have been sent), but CANCELLED was received
<i>confirm-contradiction</i>	Cancel had been ordered (and may have been sent) but CONFIRM/auto was received
<i>hazard</i>	A HAZARD message has been received
<i>invalid</i>	No such inferior is enrolled (used only in reply to a REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES/specific)

3762  
3763  
3764  
3765  
3766

**general-qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers applying to the INFERIOR\_STATUSES as a whole. Each Status-item contains a “qualifiers” field containing qualifiers applying to (and received from) the particular Inferior.

3767 **target-address** the address to which the INFERIOR\_STATUSES is sent. This  
3768 will be the “reply-address” on the received message  
3769

3770 If the inferiors-list parameter was present on the received message, only the inferiors  
3771 identified by that parameter shall have their status reported in status-list of this message. If  
3772 the inferiors-list parameter was absent, the status of all enrolled inferiors shall be reported,  
3773 except that an inferior that had been reported as *cancelled* or *resigned* on a previous  
3774 INFERIOR\_STATUSES message **may** be omitted (sender’s option).  
3775

3776 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “decider-address”)  
3777

3778 **General**

3779 **InvalidTerminator** – if Terminator address is unknown

3780 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown  
3781

3782 **Groups – combinations of related messages**  
3783

3784 The following combinations of messages form related groups, for which the meaning of the  
3785 group is not just the aggregate of the meanings of the messages. The “&” notation is used to  
3786 indicate relatedness. Messages appearing in parentheses in the names of groups in this section  
3787 indicate messages that may or may not be present. The notation A & B / & C in a group name  
3788 in this section indicates a group that contains A and B or A and C or A, B and C, possibly  
3789 with any of those appearing more than once.  
3790

3791 **CONTEXT & application message**  
3792

3793 **Meaning:** the transmission of the application message is deemed to be part of the  
3794 business transaction identified by the CONTEXT. The exact effect of this for application  
3795 work implied by the transmission of the message is determined by the application – in  
3796 many cases, it will mean the effects of the application message are to be subject to the  
3797 outcome delivered to an enrolled Inferior, thus requiring the enrolment of a new Inferior  
3798 if no appropriate Inferior is enrolled or if the CONTEXT is for cohesion.  
3799

3800 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the application message. It is not required  
3801 that the application address be a BTP address (in particular, there is no BTP-defined  
3802 “additional information” field – the application protocol (and its binding) may or may not  
3803 have a similar construct).  
3804

3805 There may be multiple application messages related to a single CONTEXT message. All  
3806 the application messages so related are deemed to be part of the business transaction  
3807 identified by the CONTEXT. This specification does not imply any further relatedness  
3808 among the application messages themselves (though the application might).  
3809

3810 The actor that sends the group shall retain knowledge of the Superior address in the  
3811 CONTEXT. If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the actor shall also keep track of  
3812 transmitted CONTEXTs for which no CONTEXT\_REPLY has been received.  
3813

3814 If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the actor receiving the CONTEXT shall ensure  
3815 that a CONTEXT\_REPLY message is sent back to the “reply-address” of the CONTEXT  
3816 with the appropriate completion status.  
3817

---

3818 Note – The representation of the relation between CONTEXT and one or  
3819 more application messages depends on the binding to the carrier protocol. It  
3820 is not necessary that the CONTEXT and application messages be closely  
3821 associated “on the wire” (or even sent on the same connection) – some kind  
3822 of referencing mechanism may be used.

---

3823

## 3824 CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL

3825

3826 **Meaning:** the enrolment of the Inferior identified in the ENROL is to be performed with  
3827 the Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT\_REPLY is replying  
3828 to. If the “completion-status” of CONTEXT\_REPLY is “related”, failure of this  
3829 enrolment shall prevent the confirmation of the business transaction.

3830

3831 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the CONTEXT\_REPLY. This will be the  
3832 “reply-address” of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply  
3833 application exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

3834

3835 The “target-address” of the ENROL message is omitted.

3836

3837 The actor receiving the related group will use the retained Superior address from the  
3838 CONTEXT sent earlier to forward the ENROL. When doing so, it changes the ENROL to  
3839 ask for a response (if it was an ENROL/no-rsp-req) and supplies its own address as the  
3840 “reply-address”, remembering the original “reply-address” if there was one.

3841

3842 If ENROLLED is received and the original received ENROL was ENROL/rsp-req, the  
3843 ENROLLED is forwarded back to the original “reply-address”.

3844

3845 If this attempt fails (i.e. ENROLLED is not received), and the “completion-status” of the  
3846 CONTEXT\_REPLY was “related”, the actor is required to ensure that the Superior does  
3847 not proceed to confirmation. How this is achieved is an implementation option, but must  
3848 take account of the possibility that direct communication with the Superior may fail. (One  
3849 method is to prevent CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION being sent to the Superior (in its role  
3850 as Decider); another is to enrol as another Inferior before sending the original CONTEXT  
3851 out with an application message). If the Superior is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer,  
3852 an enrolment failure must ensure the sub-coordinator does not send PREPARED to its  
3853 own Superior.

3854

3855 If the actor receiving the related group is also the Superior (i.e. it has the same binding  
3856 address), the explicit forwarding of the ENROL is not required, but the resultant effect –  
3857 that if enrolment fails the Superior does not confirm or issue PREPARED – shall be the  
3858 same.

3859  
3860 A CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL group may contain multiple ENROL messages, for  
3861 several Inferiors. Each ENROL shall be forwarded and an ENROLLED reply received  
3862 before the Superior is allowed to confirm if the “completion-status” in the  
3863 CONTEXT\_REPLY was “related”.

3864  
3865 When the group is constructed, if the CONTEXT had “superior-type” value of “atom”,  
3866 the “completion-status” of the CONTEXT\_REPLY shall be “related”. If the “superior-  
3867 type” was “cohesive”, the “completion-status” shall be “incomplete” or “related” (as  
3868 required by the application). If the value is “incomplete”, the actor receiving the group  
3869 shall forward the ENROLS, but is not required to prevent confirmation (though it may do  
3870 so).

### 3871 3872 **CONTEXT\_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED**

3873  
3874 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT\_REPLY and either or both of  
3875 PREPARED and CANCELLED, with or without ENROL.

3876  
3877 **Meaning:** If ENROL is present, the meaning and required processing is the same as for  
3878 CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL. The PREPARED or CANCELLED message(s) are  
3879 forwarded to the Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT\_REPLY  
3880 is replying to.

3881

---

3882 Note – the combination of CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL & CANCELLED  
3883 may be used to force cancellation of an atom

---

3884  
3885 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the CONTEXT\_REPLY. This will be the  
3886 “reply-address” of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply  
3887 application exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

3888  
3889 The “target-address” of the PREPARED and CANCELLED message is omitted – they  
3890 will be sent to the Superior identified in the earlier CONTEXT message.

3891  
3892 The actor receiving the group forwards the PREPARED or CANCELLED message to the  
3893 Superior in as for an ENROL, using the retained Superior address from the CONTEXT  
3894 sent earlier, except there is no reply required from the Superior.

3895  
3896 If (as is usual) an ENROL and PREPARED or CANCELLED message are for the same  
3897 Inferior, the ENROL shall be sent first, but the actor need not wait for the ENROLLED to  
3898 come back before sending the PREPARED or CANCELLED (so an  
3899 ENROL+PREPARED bundle from this actor to the Superior could be used).

3900  
3901 The group can contain multiple ENROL, PREPARED and CANCELLED messages.  
3902 Each PREPARED and CANCELLED message will be for a different Inferior.. There is  
3903 no constraint on the order of their forwarding, except that ENROL and PREPARED or



3904 CANCELLED for the same Inferior shall be delivered to the Superior in the order  
3905 ENROL first, followed by the other message for that Inferior.

3906

3907

3908

### 3909 **CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL & application message (& PREPARED)**

3910

3911 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT\_REPLY, ENROL and an  
3912 application message. PREPARED may or may not be present in the related group.

3913

3914 **Meaning:** the relation between the BTP messages is as for the preceding groups, The  
3915 transmission of the application message (and application effects implied by its  
3916 transmission) has been associated with the Inferior identified by the ENROL and will be  
3917 subject to the outcome delivered to that Inferior.

3918

3919 **target-address:** the “target-address” of the group is the “target-address” of the  
3920 CONTEXT\_REPLY which shall also be the “target-address” of the application message.  
3921 The ENROL and PREPARED messages do not contain their “target-address” parameters.

3922

3923 The processing of ENROL and PREPARED messages is the same as for the previous  
3924 groups.

3925

3926 This group can be used when participation in business transaction (normally a cohesion),  
3927 is initiated by the service (Inferior) side, which fetches or acquires the CONTEXT, with  
3928 some associated application semantic, performs some work for the transaction and sends  
3929 an application message with a related ENROL. The CONTEXT\_REPLY allows the  
3930 addressing of the application (and the CONTEXT\_REPLY) to be distinct from that of the  
3931 Superior.

3932

3933 The actor receiving the group may associate the “inferior-identifier” received on the  
3934 ENROL with the application message in a manner that is visible to the application  
3935 receiving the message (e.g. for subsequent use in Terminator:Decider exchanges).

3936

### 3937 **BEGUN & CONTEXT**

3938

3939 **Meaning:** the CONTEXT is that for the new business transaction, containing the  
3940 Superior address.

3941

3942 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the BEGUN message – this will be the  
3943 “reply-address” of the earlier BEGIN message.

3944

### 3945 **BEGIN & CONTEXT**

3946

3947 **Meaning:** the new business transaction is to be an Inferior (sub-coordinator or sub-  
3948 composer) of the Superior identified by the CONTEXT. The Factory (receiver of the  
3949 BEGIN) will perform the enrolment.

3950

3951           **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the BEGIN – this will be the address of the  
3952           Factory.  
3953

## 3954       **Standard qualifiers**

3955  
3956       The following qualifiers are expected to be of general use to many applications and  
3957       environments. The URI “urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers” is used in the  
3958       Qualifier group value for the qualifiers defined here.  
3959

## 3960       **Transaction timelimit**

3961  
3962       The transaction timelimit allows the Superior (or an application element initiating the  
3963       business transaction) to indicate the expected length of the active phase, and thus give an  
3964       indication to the Inferior of when it would be appropriate to initiate cancellation if the active  
3965       phase appears to continue too long. The time limit ends (the clock stops) when the Inferior  
3966       decides to be prepared and issues PREPARED to the Superior.  
3967

3968       It should be noted that the expiry of the time limit does not change the permissible actions of  
3969       the Inferior. At any time prior to deciding to be prepared (for an Inferior), the Inferior is  
3970       **permitted** to initiate cancellation for internal reasons. The timelimit gives an indication to the  
3971       entity of when it will be useful to exercise this right.  
3972

3973       The qualifier is propagated on a CONTEXT message.  
3974

3975       The “Qualifier name” shall be “transaction-timelimit”.  
3976

3977       The “Content” shall contain the following field:  
3978

Content field	Type
Timelimit	Integer

3979  
3980       **Timelimit** indicates the maximum (further) duration, expressed as whole seconds from the  
3981       time of transmission of the containing CONTEXT, of the active phase of the business  
3982       transaction.  
3983

## 3984       **Inferior timeout**

3985       This qualifier allows an Inferior to limit the duration of its “promise”, when sending  
3986       PREPARED, that it will maintain the ability to confirm or cancel the effects of all associated  
3987       operations. Without this qualifier, an Inferior is expected to retain the ability to confirm or  
3988       cancel indefinitely. If the timeout does expire, the Inferior is released from its promise and  
3989       can apply the decision indicated in the qualifier.  
3990

3991       It should be noted that BTP recognises the possibility that an Inferior may be forced to apply  
3992       a confirm or cancel decision before the CONFIRM or CANCEL is received and before this  
3993  
3994

3995 timeout expires (or if this qualifier is not used). Such a decision is termed a heuristic decision,  
 3996 and (as with other transaction mechanisms), is considered to be an exceptional event. As with  
 3997 heuristic decisions, the taking of an autonomous decision by a Inferior **subsequent** to the  
 3998 expiry of this timeout, is liable to cause contradictory decisions across the business  
 3999 transaction. BTP ensures that at least the occurrence of such a contradiction will be  
 4000 (eventually) reported to the Superior of the business transaction. BTP treats “true” heuristic  
 4001 decisions and autonomous decisions after timeout the same way – in fact, the expiry in this  
 4002 timeout does not cause a qualitative (state table) change in what can happen, but rather a step  
 4003 change in the probability that it will.

4004  
 4005 The expiry of the timeout does not strictly require that the Inferior immediately invokes the  
 4006 intended decision, only that is at liberty to do so. An implementation may choose to only  
 4007 apply the decision if there is contention for the underlying resource, for example.  
 4008 Nevertheless, Superiors are recommended to avoid relying on this and ensure decisions for  
 4009 the business transaction are made before these timeouts expire (and allow a margin of error  
 4010 for network latency etc.).

4011  
 4012 The qualifier may be present on a PREPARED message. If the PREPARED message has the  
 4013 “default-is cancel” parameter “true”, then the “IntendedDecision” field of this qualifier shall  
 4014 have the value “cancel”.

4015  
 4016 The “Qualifier name” shall be “inferior-timeout” .

4017  
 4018 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:

4019

Content field	Type
Timeout	Integer
IntendedDecision	“confirm” or “cancel”

4020

4021 **Timeout** indicates how long, expressed as whole seconds from the time of transmission of the  
 4022 carrying message, the Inferior intends to maintain its ability to either confirm or cancel the  
 4023 effects of the associated operations, as ordered by the receiving Superior.

4024

4025 **IntendedDecision** indicates which outcome will be applied, if the timeout completes and an  
 4026 autonomous decision is made.

4027

4028 **Minimum inferior timeout**

4029

4030 This qualifier allows a Superior to constrain the Inferior timeout qualifier received from the  
 4031 Inferior. If a Superior knows that the decision for the business transaction will not be  
 4032 determined for some period, it can require that Inferiors do not send PREPARED messages  
 4033 with Inferior timeouts that would expire before then. An Inferior that is unable or unwilling to  
 4034 send a PREPARED message with a longer (or no) timeout **should** cancel, and reply with  
 4035 CANCELLED.

4036

4037 The qualifier may be present on a CONTEXT, ENROLLED or PREPARE message. If  
4038 present on more than one, and with different values of the MinimumTimeout field, the value  
4039 on ENROLLED shall prevail over that on CONTEXT and the value on PREPARE shall  
4040 prevail over either of the others.

4041  
4042 The “Qualifier name” shall be “minimum-inferior-timeout”.

4043  
4044 The “Content” shall contain the following field:  
4045

Content field	Type
MinimumTimeout	Integer

4046  
4047 **Minimum Timeout** is the minimum value of timeout, expressed as whole seconds, that will be  
4048 acceptable in the Inferior timeout qualifier on an answering PREPARED message.

4049  
4050 **Inferior name**

4051  
4052 This qualifier allows an Enroller to supply a name for the Inferior that will be visible on  
4053 INFERIOR\_STATUSES and thus allow the Terminator to determine which Inferior (of the  
4054 Composer or Coordinator) is related to which application work. This is in addition to the  
4055 “inferior-identifier” field. The name can be human-readable and can also be used in fault  
4056 tracing, debugging and auditing.

4057  
4058 The name is never used by the BTP actors themselves to identify each other or to direct  
4059 messages. (The BTP actors use the addresses and the identifiers in the message parameters  
4060 for those purposes.)

4061  
4062 This specification makes no requirement that the names are unambiguous within any scope  
4063 (unlike the globally unambiguous “inferior-identifier” on ENROLLED and BEGUN). Other  
4064 specifications, including those defining use of BTP with a particular application may place  
4065 requirements on the use and form of the names. (This may include reference to information  
4066 passed in application messages or in other, non-standardised, qualifiers.)

4067  
4068 The qualifier may be present on BEGIN, ENROL and in the “qualifiers” field of a Status-item  
4069 in INFERIOR\_STATUSES. It is present on BEGIN only if there is a related CONTEXT; if  
4070 present, the same qualifier value **should** be included in the consequent ENROL. If  
4071 INFERIOR\_STATUSES includes a Status-item for an Inferior whose ENROL had an  
4072 inferior-name qualifier, the same qualifier value **should** be included in the Status-item.

4073  
4074 The “Qualifier -name” shall be “inferior-name”

4075  
4076 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:  
4077

Content field	Type
inferior-name	String

4078  
4079       **Inferior name** the name assigned to the enrolling Inferior.  
4080

## 4081   **State Tables**

4082  
4083       The state tables deal with the state transitions of the Superior and Inferior roles and which  
4084       message can be sent and received in each state. The state tables directly cover only a single,  
4085       bi-lateral Superior:Inferior relationship. The interactions between, for example, multiple  
4086       Inferiors of a single Superior that will apply the same decision to all or some (of them), are  
4087       dealt with in the definitions of the “decision” events which also specify when changes are  
4088       made to persistent state information (see below).  
4089

4090       There are two state tables, one for Superior, one for Inferior. States are identified by a letter-  
4091       digit pair, with upper-case letters for the superior, lower-case for the inferior. The same letter  
4092       is used to group states which have the same, or similar, persistent state, with the digit  
4093       indicating volatile state changes or minor variations. Corresponding upper and lower-case  
4094       letters are used to identify (approximately) corresponding Superior and Inferior states.  
4095

4096       The Inferior table includes events occurring both at the Inferior as such and at the associated  
4097       Enroller, as the Enroller’s actions are constrained by and constrain the Inferior role itself.  
4098

4099       In the state tables, each side is either waiting to make a decision or can send a message. For  
4100       some states, the message to be sent is a repetition of a regular message; for other states, the  
4101       INFERIOR\_STATE or SUPERIOR\_STATE message can be sent, requesting a response.  
4102       Normally, on entry to a state that allows the sending of any message other than one of the  
4103       \*\_STATE messages, the implementation will send that message – failure to do so will cause  
4104       the relationship to lock up. The message can be resent if the implementation determines that  
4105       the original message (or the next message sent in reply) may have been lost.  
4106

## 4107   **Status queries**

4108  
4109       In BTP the messages SUPERIOR\_STATE and INFERIOR\_STATE are available to prompt  
4110       the peer to report its current state by repeating the previous message (when this is allowed) or  
4111       by sending the other \*\_STATE message. The “reply\_requested” parameter of these messages  
4112       distinguishes between their use as a prompt and as a reply. An implementation receiving a  
4113       \*\_STATE message with “reply\_requested” as “true” is not required to reply immediately – it  
4114       may choose to delay any reply until a decision event occurs and then send the appropriate  
4115       new message (e.g. on receiving INFERIOR\_STATE/prepared/y while in state E1, a superior  
4116       is permitted to delay until it has performed “decide to confirm” or “decide to cancel”).  
4117       However, this may cause the other side to repeatedly send interrogatory \*\_STATE messages.  
4118

4119       Note that a Superior (or some entity standing in for a now-extinct Superior) uses  
4120       SUPERIOR\_STATE/unknown to reply to messages received from an Inferior where the  
4121       Superior:Inferior relationship is in an unknown (using state “Y1”). The \*\_STATE messages  
4122       with a “state” value “inaccessible” can be used as a reply when **any** message is received and  
4123       the implementation is temporarily unable to determine whether the relationship is known or  
4124       what the state is. Receipt of the \*\_STATE/inaccessible messages is not shown in the tables

4125 and has no effect on the state at the receiving side (though it may cause the implementation to  
4126 resend its own message after some interval of its own choosing).

#### 4127 **Decision events**

4128

4129 The persistent state changes (equivalent to logging in a regular transaction system) and some  
4130 other events are modelled as “decision events” (e.g. “decide to confirm”, “decide to be  
4131 prepared”). The exact nature of the real events and changes in an implementation that are  
4132 modelled by these events depends on the position of the Superior or Inferior within the  
4133 business transaction and on features of the implementation (e.g. making of a persistent record  
4134 of the decision means that the information will survive at least some failures that otherwise  
4135 lose state information, but the level of survival depends on the purpose of the  
4136 implementation). [Table 3](#)~~Table 2~~ and [Table 4](#)~~Table 3~~ define the decision events.

4137

4138 The Superior event “decide to prepare” is considered semi-persistent. Since the sending of  
4139 PREPARE indicates that the application exchange (to associate operations with the Inferior)  
4140 is complete, it is not meaningful for the Superior:Inferior relationship to revert to an earlier  
4141 state corresponding to an incomplete application exchange. However, implementations are  
4142 not required to make the sending of PREPARE persistent in terms of recovery – a Superior  
4143 that experiences failure after sending PREPARE may, on recovery, have no information  
4144 about the transaction, in which case it is considered to be in the completed state (Z), which  
4145 will imply the cancellation of the Inferior and its associated operations.

4146

4147 Where a Superior is an Intermediate (i.e. is itself an Inferior to another Superior entity), in a  
4148 transaction tree, its “decide to confirm” and “decide to cancel” decisions will in fact be the  
4149 receipt of a CONFIRM or CANCEL instruction from its own Superior, without necessary  
4150 change of local persistent information (which would combine both superior and inferior  
4151 information, pointing both up and down the tree).

4152

#### 4153 **Disruptions – failure events**

4154

4155 Failure events are modelled as “disruption”. A failure and the subsequent recovery will (or  
4156 may) cause a change of state. The disruption events in the state tables model different extents  
4157 of loss of state information. An implementation is **not** required to exhibit all the possible  
4158 disruption events, but it is not allowed to exhibit state transitions that do not correspond to a  
4159 possible disruption. The different levels of disruption describe legitimate states for the  
4160 endpoint to be in after it has been restored to normal functioning. The absence of a destination  
4161 state for the disruption events means that such a transition is not legitimate – thus, for  
4162 example, an Inferior that has decided to be prepared will always recover to the same state, by  
4163 virtue of the information persisted in the “decide to be prepared” event.

4164

4165 In addition to the disruption events in the tables, there is an implicit “disruption 0” event,  
4166 which involves possible interruption of service and loss of messages in transit, but no change  
4167 of state (either because no state information was lost, or because recovery from persistent  
4168 information restores the implementation to the same state). The “disruption 0” event would  
4169 typically be an appropriate abstraction for a communication failure.

4170

## Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication mechanism

The empty cells in state table represent events that cannot happen. For events corresponding to sending a message or any of the decision events, this prohibition is absolute – e.g. a conformant implementation in the Superior active state “B1” will not send CONFIRM. For events corresponding to receiving a message, the interpretation depends on the properties of the underlying communications mechanism.

For all communication mechanisms, it is assumed that

- a) the two directions of the Superior:Inferior communication are not synchronised – that is messages travelling in opposite directions can cross each other to any degree; any number of messages may be in transit in either direction; and
- b) messages may be lost arbitrarily

If the communication mechanisms guarantee ordered delivery (i.e. that messages, if delivered at all, are delivered to the receiver in the order they were sent) , then receipt of a message in a state where the corresponding cell is empty indicates that the far-side has sent a message out of order – a FAULT message with the “fault-type” “WrongState” can be returned.

If the communication mechanisms cannot guarantee ordered delivery, then messages received where the corresponding cell is empty should be ignored. Assuming the far-side is conformant, these messages can assumed to be “stale” and have been overtaken by messages sent later but already delivered. (If the far-side is non-conformant, there is a problem anyway).

## Meaning of state table events

The tables in this section define the events (rows) in the state tables. [Table 2](#)~~Table 1~~ defines the events corresponding to sending or receiving BTP messages and the disruption events. [Table 3](#)~~Table 2~~ describes the decision events for an Inferior, [Table 4](#)~~Table 3~~ those for a Superior.

The decision events for a Superior, defined in [Table 4](#)~~Table 3~~ cannot be specified without reference to other Inferiors to which it is Superior and to its relation with the application or other entity that (acting ultimately on behalf of the application) drives it.

The term “remaining Inferiors” refers to any actors to which this endpoint is Superior and which are to be treated as an atomic decision unit with (and thus including) the Inferior on this relationship. If the CONTEXT for this Superior:Inferior relationship had a “superior-type” of “atom”, this will be all Inferiors established with same Superior address and “superior-identifier” except those from which RESIGN has been received. If the CONTEXT had “superior-type” of “cohesion”, the “remaining Inferiors” excludes any that it has been determined will be cancelled, as well as any that have resigned – in other words it includes only those for which a confirm decision is still possible or has been made. The determination of exactly which Inferiors are “remaining Inferiors” in a cohesion is determined, in some way, by the application. The term “Other remaining Inferiors” excludes this Inferior on this relationship. A Superior with a single Inferior will have no “other remaining Inferiors”.

4218  
 4219  
 4220  
 4221  
 4222  
 4223  
 4224  
 4225  
 4226  
 4227  
 4228  
 4229  
 4230  
 4231  
 4232  
 4233  
 4234  
 4235  
 4236  
 4237  
 4238  
 4239  
 4240  
 4241  
 4242  
 4243  
 4244

In order to ensure that the confirmation decision **is** delivered to all remaining Inferiors, despite failures, the Superior must persistently record which these Inferiors are (i.e. their addresses and identifiers). It must also either record that the decision is confirm, or ensure that the confirm decision (if there is one) is persistently recorded somewhere else, and that it will be told about it. This latter would apply if the Superior were also BTP Inferior to another entity which persisted a confirm decision (or recursively deferred it still higher). However, since there is no requirement that the Superior be also a BTP Inferior to any other entity, the behaviour of asking another entity to make (and persist) the confirm decision is termed "offering confirmation" - the Superior offers the possible confirmation of itself, and its remaining Inferiors to some other entity. If that entity (or something higher up) then does make and persist a confirm decision, the Superior is "instructed to confirm" (which is equivalent BTP CONFIRM).

The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may request a Superior to prepare an Inferior (or all Inferiors). This typically implies that there will be no more operations associated with the Inferior. Following a request to prepare all remaining Inferiors, the Superior may offer confirmation to the entity that requested the prepare. (If the Superior is also a BTP Inferior, its superior can be considered an entity acting on behalf of the application.)

The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may also request confirmation. This means the Superior is to attempt to make and persist a confirm decision itself, rather than offer confirmation.

**Table 21 : send, receive and disruption events**

Event name	Meaning
send/receive ENROL/rsp-req	send/receive ENROL with response-requested = true
send/receive ENROL/no-rsp-req	send/receive ENROL with response-requested = false
send/receive RESIGN/rsp-req	send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = true
send/receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req	send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = false
send/receive PREPARED	send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = false
send/receive PREPARED/cancel	send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = true
send/receive CONFIRMED/auto	send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = true
send/receive CONFIRMED/response	send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = false
send/receive HAZARD	send/receive HAZARD
send/receive INF_STATE/***/y	send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true



Event name	Meaning
send/receive INF_STATE/***	send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false
send/receive SUP_STATE/***/y	send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true ("prepared-rcvd" represents "prepared-received")
send/receive SUP_STATE/***	send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false ("prepared-rcvd" represents "prepared-received")
disruption ***	Loss of state– new state is state applying after any local recovery processes complete

4245

4246

**Table 32 : Decision events for Inferior**

Event name	Meaning
decide to resign	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Any associated operations have had no effect (data state is unchanged)).</li> </ul>
decide to be prepared	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Effects of all associated operations can be confirmed or cancelled;</li> <li>information to retain confirm/cancel ability has been made persistent</li> </ul>
decide to be prepared/cancel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As "decide to be prepared";</li> <li>the persistent information specifies that the default action will be to cancel</li> </ul>
decide to confirm autonomously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Decision to confirm autonomously has been made persistent;</li> <li>the effects of associated operations will be confirmed regardless of failures</li> </ul>
decide to cancel autonomously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Decision to cancel autonomously has been made persistent</li> <li>the effects of associated operations will be cancelled regardless of failures</li> </ul>
apply ordered confirmation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Effects of all associated operations have been confirmed;</li> <li>Persistent information is effectively removed</li> </ul>
remove persistent information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persistent information is effectively removed;</li> </ul>

Event name	Meaning
detect problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For at least some of the associated operations, EITHER <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ they cannot be consistently cancelled or consistently confirmed; OR</li> <li>○ it cannot be determined whether they will be cancelled or confirmed</li> </ul> </li> <li>• AND, information about this is not persistent</li> </ul>
detect and record problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As for the first condition of “detect problem”</li> <li>• information recording this has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate), or the detection itself is persistent. (i.e. will be re-detected on recovery)</li> </ul>

4247

4248

**Table 43: Decision events for a Superior**

Event name	Meaning
decide to confirm one-phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All associated application messages to be sent to the service have been sent;</li> <li>• There are no other remaining Inferiors</li> <li>• If an atom, all enrolments that would create other Inferiors have completed (no outstanding CONTEXT_REPLYS)</li> <li>• The Superior has been requested to confirm</li> </ul>
decide to prepare	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All associated application messages to be sent to the service have been sent;</li> <li>• The Superior has been requested to prepare this Inferior</li> </ul>
decide to confirm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ PREPARED or PREPARED/cancel has been received from all other remaining Inferiors; AND</li> <li>○ Superior has been requested to confirm; AND</li> <li>○ persistent information records the confirm decision and identifies all remaining Inferiors;</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ persistent information records an offer of confirmation and has been instructed to confirm</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
decide to cancel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Superior has not offered confirmation; OR</li> <li>• Superior has offered confirmation and has been instructed to cancel; OR</li> </ul>

Event name	Meaning
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Superior has offered confirmation but has made an autonomous cancellation decision</li> </ul>
remove confirm information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persistent information has been effectively removed;</li> </ul>
record contradiction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Information recording the contradiction has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate)</li> </ul>

4249

4250

### Persistent information

4251

4252

Persisted information (especially prepared information at an Inferior, confirm information at a Superior) may include qualifications of the state carried in Qualifiers of the corresponding message (e.g. inferior timeouts in prepared information). It may also include application-specific information (especially in Inferiors) to allow the future confirmation or cancellation of the associated operations. In some cases it will also include information allowing an application message sent with a BTP message (e.g. PREPARED) to be repeated.

4253

4254

4255

4256

4257

4258

4259

The “effective” removal of persistent information allows for the possibility that the information is retained (perhaps for audit and tracing purposes) but some change to the persistent information (as a whole) means that if there is a failure after such change, on recovery, the persistent information does not cause the endpoint to return the state it would have recovered to before the change.

4260

4261

4262

4263

4264

4265

In all cases, the degree to which information described as “persistent” will survive failure is a configuration and implementation option. An implementation **should** describe the level of failure that it is capable of surviving. For applications manipulating information that is itself volatile (e.g. network configurations), there is no requirement to make the BTP state information more persistent than the application information.

4266

4267

4268

4269

4270

4271

The degree of persistence of the recording of a hazard (problem) at an Inferior and recording of a detected contradiction at a Superior may be different from that applying to the persistent prepared and confirm information. Implementations and configuration may choose to pass hazard and contradiction information via management mechanisms rather than through BTP. Such passing of information to a management mechanism could be treated as “record problem” or “record contradiction”.

4272

4273

4274

4275

4276

4277

**Table 54 : Superior states**

State	summary
I1	CONTEXT created
A1	ENROLing
B1	ENROLLED (active)
C1	resigning
D1	PREPARE sent
E1	PREPARED received
E2	PREPARED/cancel received
F1	CONFIRM sent
F2	completed after confirm
G1	cancel decided
G2	CANCEL sent
G3	cancelling, RESIGN received
G4	both cancelled
H1	inferior autonomously confirmed
J1	Inferior autonomously cancelled
K1	confirmed, contradiction detected
L1	cancelled, contradiction detected
P1	hazard reported
P2	hazard reported in null state
P3	hazard reported after confirm decision
P4	hazard reported after cancel decision
Q1	contradiction detected in null state
R1	Contradiction or hazard recorded
R2	completed after contradiction or hazard recorded
S1	one-phase confirm decided
Y1	completed queried
Z	completed and unknown

**Table 65 : Inferior states**

State	summary
i1	aware of CONTEXT
a1	enrolling
b1	enrolled
c1	resigning
d1	preparing
e1	prepared
e2	prepared,default to cancel
f1	confirming
f2	confirming after default cancel
g1	CANCEL received in prepared state
g2	CANCEL received in prepared/cancel state
h1	Autonomously confirmed
h2	autonomously confirmed, superior confirmed
j1	autonomously cancelled
j2	autonomously cancelled, superior cancelled
k1	autonomously cancelled, contradicted
k2	autonomously cancelled, CONTRADICTION received
l1	autonomously confirmed, contradicted
l2	autonomously confirmed, CONTRADICTION received
m1	confirmation applied
n1	cancelling
p1	hazard detected, not recorded
p2	hazard detected in prepared state, not recorded
q1	hazard recorded
s1	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received after prepared state
s2	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received
s3	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, confirming
s4	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, cancelling
s5	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard detected
s6	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard recorded
x1	completed, presuming abort
x2	completed, presuming abort after prepared/cancel

State	summary
y1	completed, queried
y2	completed, default cancel, a message received
z	completed
z1	completed with default cancel

4281  
4282

4282

## Superior state table

4283

Table 76: Superior state table – normal forward progression

	I 1	A 1	B 1	B 2	C 1	D 1	E 1	E 2	F 1	F 2
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req	A1	A1	B2	B2		D1				
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req	B1		B1	B1		D1				
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req	Y1		C1	C1	C1	C1				
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req	Z		Z	Z	Z	Z				
recei ve PREPARED	Y1		E1	E1		E1	E1		F1	
recei ve PREPARED/cancel	Y1		E2	E2		E2		E2	F1	
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto	Q1		H1	H1		H1	H1		F1	
recei ve CONFIR MED/response									F2	F2
recei ve CANCELLED	Y1		Z	Z		Z	J1	J1	K1	
recei ve HAZARD	P1	P1	P1	P1		P1	P1	P1	P3	
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y	Y1	A1	B1	B2		D1				
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve			B1	B2		D1				
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown			Z	Z	Z	Z				
send ENROLLED		B1		B1						
send RESI GNED					Z					
send PREPARE						D1	E1	E2		
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE									F1	
send CONFIR M										
send CANCEL										
send CONTRADI CTI ON										
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y			B1							
send SUP_STATE/acti ve			B1							
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y							E1	E2		
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd							E1	E2		
send SUP_STATE/unknown										
deci de to confi rm one-phase			S1	S1			S1	S1		
deci de to prepare			D1	D1						
deci de to confi rm							F1	F1		
deci de to cancel			G1	G1		G1	G1	Z		
remove persi stent i nformati on record contradi cti on										Z
di srupti on I	Z	Z	Z	Z	B1	Z	Z	Z		F1
di srupti on II					Z		D1	D1		
di srupti on III							B1	B1		
di srupti on IV										

4284

4285

Table 87: Superior state table – cancellation and contradiction

	G1	G2	G3	G4	H1	J1	K1	L1
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req	G1	G2						
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req	G1	G2						
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req	G3	Z	G3					
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req	Z	Z	Z					
recei ve PREPARED	G1	G2						
recei ve PREPARED/cancel	G1	G2						
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto	L1	L1			H1			L1
recei ve CONFIR MED/response								
recei ve CANCELLED	G4	Z		G4		J1	K1	
recei ve HAZARD	P4	P4						
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y	G1	G2						
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve	G1	G2						
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown	Z	Z	Z	Z				
send ENROLLED								
send RESI GNED								
send PREPARE								
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE								
send CONFIR M								
send CANCEL	G2	G2	Z	Z				
send CONTRADI CTI ON								
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y								
send SUP_STATE/acti ve								
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y								
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd								
send SUP_STATE/unknown								
deci de to confi rm one-phase								
deci de to prepare					F1	K1		
deci de to confi rm					L1	G4		
deci de to cancel								
remove persi stent i nformati on							R1	R1
record contradi cti on								
di srupti on I	Z	Z	Z	Z	Z	Z	F1	Z
di srupti on II			G2	G2	E1	E1		G2
di srupti on III					D1	D1		
di srupti on IV					B1	B1		



**Table 98: Superior state table – hazard and request confirm**

	P1	P2	P3	P4	Q1	R1	R2	S1
receive ENROL/rsp-req								S1
receive ENROL/no-rsp-req								S1
receive RESIGN/rsp-req								Z
receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req								Z
receive PREPARED								S1
receive PREPARED/cancel								S1
receive CONFIRMED/auto					Q1	R1	R1	S1
receive CONFIRMED/response					Z	R2		Z
receive CANCELLED						R1	R1	Z
receive HAZARD	P1	P2	P3	P4		R1	R1	Z
receive INF_STATE/active/y								S1
receive INF_STATE/active								S1
receive INF_STATE/unknown	P1	P2		P4		R2	R2	Z
send ENROLLED								
send RESIGNED								
send PREPARE								
send CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE								S1
send CONFIRM								
send CANCEL								
send CONTRADICTION						R2		
send SUP_STATE/active/y								
send SUP_STATE/active								
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y								
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd								
send SUP_STATE/unknown								
decide to confirm one-phase								
decide to prepare								
decide to confirm								
decide to cancel								
remove persistent information							Z	
record contradiction	R1	R1	R1	R1	R1			
disruption I	Z	Z	Z	Z	Z		R1	Z
disruption II	D1		F1	G2				
disruption III	B1							
disruption IV								

4288

4289

**Table 109: Superior state table – query after completion and completed states**

	Y1	Z
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req	Y1	Y1
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req	Y1	Y1
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req	Y1	Y1
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req	Z	Z
recei ve PREPARED	Y1	Y1
recei ve PREPARED/cancel	Y1	Y1
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto	Q1	Q1
recei ve CONFIR MED/response	Z	Z
recei ve CANCELLED	Y1	Y1
recei ve HAZARD	P2	P2
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y	Y1	Y1
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve	Y1	Z
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown	Z	Z
send ENROLLED		
send RESI GNED		
send PREPARE		
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE		
send CONFIR M		
send CANCEL		
send CONTRADI CTI ON		
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y		
send SUP_STATE/acti ve		
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y		
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd		
send SUP_STATE/unknown	Z	
deci de to confi rm one-phase		
deci de to prepare		
deci de to confi rm		
deci de to cancel		
remove persi stent i nformati on		
record contradi cti on		
di srupti on I	Z	
di srupti on II		
di srupti on III		
di srupti on IV		

4290

4291

4291

**Inferior state table**

4292

**Table 1140: Inferior state table – normal forward progression**

	i 1	a 1	b 1	c 1	d 1	e 1	e 2	f 1	f 2
send ENROL/rsp-req	a1	a1							
send ENROL/no-rsp-req	b1		b1						
send RESI GN/rsp-req				c1					
send RESI GN/no-rsp-req				z					
send PREPARED						e1			
send PREPARED/cancel							e2		
send CONFIR MED/auto									
send CONFIR MED/response									
send CANCELLED			z		z				
send HAZARD									
send INF_STATE/active/y		a1	b1		d1				
send INF_STATE/active			b1		d1				
send INF_STATE/unknown									
recei ve ENROLLED		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2		
recei ve RESI GNED				z					
recei ve PREPARE		d1	d1	c1	d1	e1	e2		
recei ve CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE		s2	s2	z		s1	s1		
recei ve CONFIR M						f1	f2	f1	f2
recei ve CANCEL		n1	n1	z	n1	g1	g2		
recei ve CONTRADI CTI ON									
recei ve SUP_STATE/acti ve/y		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2		
recei ve SUP_STATE/acti ve		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2		
recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y						e1	e2		
recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd						e1	e2		
recei ve SUP_STATE/unknown		z	z	z	z	x1	x2		
deci de to resi gn			c1		c1				
deci de to be prepared			e1		e1				
deci de to be prepared/cancel			e2		e2				
deci de to confi rm autonomously						h1			
deci de to cancel autonomously						j 1	z1		
apply ordered confi rmation								m1	m1
remove persi stent i nformati on									
detect probl em		p1	p1		p1	p2	p2	p2	p2
detect and record probl em									
di srupti on I		z	z	z	z			e1	e2
di srupti on II					b1				
di srupti on III									

4293

4294

Table 124: Inferior state table – cancellation and contradiction

	g1	g2	h1	h2	j1	j2	k1	k2	l1	l2
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD			h1		j1		k1		l1	
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/unknown										
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	g1	g2	h1 h1 h2 h2 l1 l2		j1 j1 k1 j2 j2 k2		k1 k2 k2		l1 l2 l2	
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/unknown	x1	x2	h1 h1 h1 h1 l1		j1 j1 j1 j1 j2 j2		k2 k2		l1	
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem	n1 p2	n1 p2	m1		z		z		z	
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	e2	h1		j1		j1 k1 j1		h1 l1 h1	

**Table 1312: Inferior state table – confirm, cancel ordered and hazard recording**

	m1	n1	p1	p2	q1
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESI GN/rsp-req send RESI GN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIR MED/auto send CONFIR MED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD	z	z	p1	p2	q1
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/unknown					
recei ve ENROLLED recei ve RESI GNED recei ve PREPARE recei ve CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE recei ve CONFIR M recei ve CANCEL recei ve CONTRADI CTI ON	m1	n1	p1 s5 z	p2 s5 z	q1 s6 q1 z
recei ve SUP_STATE/active/y recei ve SUP_STATE/active recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd recei ve SUP_STATE/unknown		z	p1 p1 p1	p2 p2 p2	q1 q1 q1 q1
deci de to resi gn deci de to be prepared deci de to be prepared/cancel deci de to confi rm autonomously deci de to cancel autonomously apply ordered confi rmati on remove persi stent i nformati on detect probl em detect and record probl em					q1 q1
di srupti on I di srupti on II di srupti on III	z	z d1 b1	z		

4297

4298

**Table 1413: Inferior state table – request confirm states**

	s1	s2	s3	s4	s5	s6
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD			z	z	z	z
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/unknown						
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	s1	s2	s3	s4	s5	s6
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/unknown	x1	z	z	z	z	z
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem			s3 s4			s6
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	z		z	z	

4300

**Table 1514: Inferior state table – completed states (including presume-abort and queried)**

	x1	x2	y1	y2	z	z1
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD						z1
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/unknown			z			
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION			y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 z	y2  y2 y2 y2 z z	z z y1 y1 m1 y1 z	z1  z1 y1 y2 y1 y1 z
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/unknown			y1 y1  y1	y2 y2 y2 y2	y1 z  y2	y2 z1 y2 y2 z
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem						
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	e2				

4301

4302

## 4302 Persistent information

4303

4304 The BTP recovery mechanisms require that information is persisted by the BTP actors that  
4305 perform the Superior and Inferior roles. To ensure consistent application of the outcome,  
4306 despite failures, the Inferior must persist some state information at the point of becoming  
4307 prepared, and the Superior at the point of making a confirm decision. If the Superior is a Sub-  
4308 coordinator or Sub-composer, it must persist information when, as an Inferior it becomes  
4309 prepared. The minimum information to be persisted is the identifiers and addresses of the  
4310 peer Inferiors and Superior – the fact of the persistence being itself an indication of the  
4311 preparedness or confirm decision. However, BTP allows recovery of a Superior:Inferior  
4312 relationship to occur in other cases – during the active phase, and before a confirm decision  
4313 has been made. Thus, in general, the BTP actors will need to persist the current state of the  
4314 relationships.

4315

4316 Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, which may need to be re-sent  
4317 in the case of failure (because the first attempt got lost). BTP actors should be prepared to  
4318 persist such qualifiers as well.

4319

4320 A Participant will normally also need to persist some information concerning the application  
4321 work whose final or counter effect it is responsible for. The nature of this information is not  
4322 considered further in this specification.

4323

4324 Information to be persisted for an Inferior's "decision to be prepared" must be sufficient to  
4325 re-establish communication with the Superior, to apply a confirm decision and to apply a  
4326 cancel decision. It will thus need to include

4327

"superior-address"(as on CONTEXT as updated by REDIRECT)

4328

"superior-identifier" (as on CONTEXT)

4329

"default-is-cancel" value (as on PREPARED)

4330

4331 A Superior must record corresponding information to allow it to re-establish communication  
4332 with the Inferior. Thus, for each Inferior

4333

"inferior-address" (as on ENROL, as updated by REDIRECT)

4334

"inferior-identifier" (as on ENROL)

4335

4336 In order to recover their own function, both Superior and Inferior will need to persist their  
4337 own Identifier ("superior-identifier" and "inferior-identifier") and, depending on the  
4338 implementation, may need to persist their original "superior-address" or "inferior-address".

4339

4340

## 4341 XML representation of Message Set

4342

4343 This section describes the syntax for BTP messages in XML. These XML messages represent  
4344 a midpoint between the abstract messages and what actually gets sent on the wire.

4345

4346 All BTP related URIs have been created using Oasis URI conventions as specified in [RFC](#)

4347 [3121](#)



4348  
4349  
4350  
4351  
4352  
4353  
4354  
4355  
4356  
4357  
4358  
4359  
4360  
4361  
4362  
4363  
4364  
4365  
4366  
4367  
4368  
4369  
4370  
4371  
4372  
4373  
4374  
4375  
4376  
4377  
4378  
4379  
4380  
4381  
4382  
4383  
4384  
4385  
4386  
4387  
4388  
4389  
4390  
4391  
4392  
4393  
4394  
4395  
4396

The XML Namespace for the BTP messages is urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core

In addition to an XML schema, this specification uses an informal syntax to describe the structure of the BTP messages. The syntax appears as an XML instance, but the values contain data types instead of values. The following symbols are appended to some of the XML constructs: ? (zero or one), \* (zero or more), + (one or more.) The absence of one of these symbols corresponds to "one and only one."

The Delivery parameters are shown in the XML with a darker background.

## Addresses

As described in the “Abstract Message and Associated Contracts – Addresses” section, a BTP address comprises three parts, and for a “target-address” only the “additional information” field is inside the BTP messages. For all BTP messages whose abstract form includes a “target-address” parameter, the corresponding XML representation includes a “target-additional-information” element. This element may be omitted if it would be empty.

For other addresses, all three fields are represent, as in:

```
<btp:some-address>
  <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding URI...</btp:binding-name>
  <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific
address...</btp:binding-address>
  <btp:additional-information>...optional additional addressing
information...</btp:additional-information> ?
</btp:some-address>
```

A "published" address can be a set of <some-address>, which are alternatives which can be chosen by the peer (sender.) Multiple addresses are used in two cases: different bindings to same endpoint, or backup endpoints. In the former, the receiver of the message has the choice of which address to use (depending on which binding is preferable.) In the case where multiple addresses are used for redundancy, a priority attribute can be specified to help the receiver choose among the addresses- the address with the highest priority should be used, other things being equal. The priority is used as a hint and does not enforce any behaviour in the receiver of the message. Default priority is a value of 1.

## Qualifiers

The “Qualifier name” is used as the element name, within the namespace of the “Qualifier group”.

### Examples:

```
<btpq:inferior-timeout
  xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"
  xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
  btp:must-be-understood="false"
  btp:to-be-propagated="false">1800</btpq:inferior-timeout>
```

4397  
4398  
4399  
4400  
4401  
4402  
4403  
4404  
4405  
4406  
4407  
4408  
4409  
4410

```
<auth:username
  xmlns:auth="http://www.example.com/ns/auth"
  xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
  btp:must-be-understood="true"
  btp:to-be-propagated="true">jtauber</auth:username>
```

Attributes must-be-understood **has default value “true”** and to-be-propagated has default value “false”.

## Identifiers

Identifiers shall be URIs "

4411  
4412  
4413

---

Note – Identifiers need to be globally unambiguous. Apart from their generation, the only operation the BTP implementations have to perform on identifiers is to match them.

---

4414  
4415  
4416  
4417  
4418

## Message References

Each BTP message has an optional id attribute to give it a unique identifier. An application can make use of those identifiers, but no processing is enforced.

4419  
4420

## Messages

4421

### CONTEXT

4422  
4423  
4424  
4425  
4426  
4427  
4428  
4429  
4430  
4431  
4432  
4433  
4434  
4435  
4436

```
<btp:context id?>
  <btp:superior-address> +
    ...address...
  </btp:superior-address>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
  <btp:superior-type>cohesion|atom</btp:superior-type>
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
    ...qualifiers...
  </btp:qualifiers>
  <btp:reply-address> ?
    ...address...
  </btp:reply-address>
</btp:context>
```

4437

### CONTEXT\_REPLY

4438  
4439  
4440  
4441  
4442  
4443  
4444

```
<btp:context-reply id?>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
  <btp:completion-
status>completed|incomplete|related|repudiated</btp:completion-
status>
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
```

```

4445     ...qualifiers...
4446 </btp:qualifiers>
4447 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4448     ...additional address information...
4449 </btp:target-additional-information>
4450 </btp:context-reply>

```

## REQUEST\_STATUS

```

4453
4454 <btp:request-status id?>
4455   <btp:target-identifier>...URI...</btp:target-identifier>
4456   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4457     ...qualifiers...
4458   </btp:qualifiers>
4459   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4460     ...additional address information...
4461   </btp:target-additional-information>
4462   <btp:reply-address> ?
4463     ...address...
4464   </btp:reply-address>
4465 </btp:request-status>

```

## STATUS

```

4466
4467
4468
4469 <btp:status id?>
4470   <btp:responders-identifier>...URI...</btp:responders-identifier>
4471   <btp:status-value>created|enrolling|active|resigning|
4472     resigned|preparing|prepared|
4473     confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|
4474     cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|
4475     hazard|contradicted|unknown|inaccessible</btp:status-
4476 value>
4477   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4478     ...qualifiers...
4479   </btp:qualifiers>
4480   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4481     ...additional address information...
4482   </btp:target-additional-information>
4483 </btp:status>

```

## FAULT

```

4484
4485
4486
4487 <btp:fault id?>
4488   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier> ?
4489   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> ?
4490   <btp:fault-type>...fault type name...</btp:fault-type>
4491   <btp:fault-data>...fault data...</btp:fault-data> ?
4492   <btp:fault-text>...string data ...</btp:fault-data> ?
4493   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4494     ...qualifiers...
4495   </btp:qualifiers>
4496   <btp:target-additional-information> ?

```

```
4497     ...additional address information...
4498     </btp:target-additional-information>
4499 </btp:fault>
```

The following fault type names are represented by simple strings, corresponding to the entries defined in the abstract message set:

- 4504 o communication-failure
- 4505 o duplicate-inferior
- 4506 o general
- 4507 o invalid-decider
- 4508 o invalid-inferior
- 4509 o invalid-superior
- 4510 o status-refused
- 4511 o invalid-terminator
- 4512 o unknown-parameter
- 4513 o unknown-transaction
- 4514 o unsupported-qualifier
- 4515 o wrong-state
- 4516 o redirect

Revisions of this specification may add other fault type names, which shall be simple strings of letters, numbers and hyphens. If other specifications define fault type names to be used with BTP, the names shall be URIs.

Fault data can take on various forms:

Identifier:

```
<btp:fault-data>...URI...</btp:fault-data>
```

Inferior Identity:

```
<btp:fault-data>
  <btp:inferior-address> +
    ...address...
  </btp:inferior-address>
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
</btp:fault-data>
```

**ENROL**

```
<btp:enrol id?>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
  <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested>
  <btp:inferior-address> +
```

```
4545     ...address...
4546 </btp:inferior-address>
4547 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4548 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4549     ...qualifiers...
4550 </btp:qualifiers>
4551 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4552     ...additional address information...
4553 </btp:target-additional-information>
4554 <btp:reply-address> ?
4555     ...address...
4556 </btp:reply-address>
4557 </btp:enrol>
```

4558  
4559

## ENROLLED

```
4560
4561
4562 <btp:enrolled id?>
4563     <btp:sender-address> ?
4564         ...address...
4565     </btp:sender-address>
4566 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4567 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4568     ...qualifiers...
4569 </btp:qualifiers>
4570 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4571     ...additional address information...
4572 </btp:target-additional-information>
4573 </btp:enrolled>
```

4574  
4575

## RESIGN

```
4576
4577
4578 <btp:resign id?>
4579     <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4580     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4581     <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested>
4582     <btp:qualifiers> ?
4583         ...qualifiers...
4584     </btp:qualifiers>
4585     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4586         ...additional address information...
4587     </btp:target-additional-information>
4588     <btp:sender-address> ?
4589         ...address...
4590     </btp:sender-address>
4591 </btp:resign>
```

4592  
4593

## RESIGNED

4594  
4595

```
4596 <btpr:resigned id?>
4597 <btpr:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:inferior-identifier>
4598 <btpr:qualifiers> ?
4599 ...qualifiers...
4600 </btpr:qualifiers>
4601 <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
4602 ...additional address information...
4603 </btpr:target-additional-information>
4604 <btpr:sender-address> ?
4605 ...address...
4606 </btpr:sender-address>
4607 </btpr:resigned>
```

## PREPARE

```
4611 <btpp:prepare id?>
4612 <btpp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpp:inferior-identifier>
4613 <btpp:qualifiers> ?
4614 ...qualifiers...
4615 </btpp:qualifiers>
4616 <btpp:target-additional-information> ?
4617 ...additional address information...
4618 </btpp:target-additional-information>
4619 <btpp:sender-address> ?
4620 ...address...
4621 </btpp:sender-address>
4622 </btpp:prepare>
```

## PREPARED

```
4627 <btpp:prepared id?>
4628 <btpp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btpp:superior-identifier>
4629 <btpp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpp:inferior-identifier>
4630 <btpp:default-is-cancel>true|false</btpp:default-is-cancel>
4631 <btpp:qualifiers> ?
4632 ...qualifiers...
4633 </btpp:qualifiers>
4634 <btpp:target-additional-information> ?
4635 ...additional address information...
4636 </btpp:target-additional-information>
4637 <btpp:sender-address> ?
4638 ...address...
4639 </btpp:sender-address>
4640 </btpp:prepared>
```

## CONFIRM

```
4644 <btpp:confirm id?>
```

```
4647 <btpr:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:inferior-identifier>
4648 <btpr:qualifiers> ?
4649   ...qualifiers...
4650 </btpr:qualifiers>
4651 <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
4652   ...additional address information...
4653 </btpr:target-additional-information>
4654 <btpr:sender-address> ?
4655   ...address...
4656 </btpr:sender-address>
4657 </btpr:confirm>
```

## CONFIRMED

```
4661
4662 <btpr:confirmed id?>
4663   <btpr:superior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:superior-identifier>
4664   <btpr:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:inferior-identifier>
4665   <btpr:confirmed-received>true|false</btpr:confirmed-received>
4666   <btpr:qualifiers> ?
4667     ...qualifiers...
4668   </btpr:qualifiers>
4669   <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
4670     ...additional address information...
4671   </btpr:target-additional-information>
4672   <btpr:sender-address> ?
4673     ...address...
4674   </btpr:sender-address>
4675 </btpr:confirmed>
```

## CANCEL

```
4676
4677
4678
4679
4680 <btpr:cancel id?>
4681   <btpr:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:inferior-identifier>
4682   <btpr:reply-address> ?
4683     ...address...
4684   </btpr:reply-address>
4685   <btpr:qualifiers> ?
4686     ...qualifiers...
4687   </btpr:qualifiers>
4688   <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
4689     ...additional address information...
4690   </btpr:target-additional-information>
4691   <btpr:sender-address> ?
4692     ...address...
4693   </btpr:sender-address>
4694 </btpr:cancel>
```

4695  
4696

4697  
4698  
4699  
4700  
4701  
4702  
4703  
4704  
4705  
4706  
4707  
4708  
4709  
4710  
4711  
4712  
4713  
4714  
4715  
4716  
4717  
4718  
4719  
4720  
4721  
4722  
4723  
4724  
4725  
4726  
4727  
4728  
4729  
4730  
4731  
4732  
4733  
4734  
4735  
4736  
4737  
4738  
4739  
4740  
4741  
4742  
4743  
4744  
4745  
4746  
4747  
4748

## CANCELLED

```
<btp:cancelled id?>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>

  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> ?
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
    ...qualifiers...
</btp:qualifiers>
<btp:target-additional-information> ?
  ...additional address information...
</btp:target-additional-information>
<btp:sender-address> ?
  ...address...
</btp:sender-address>
</btp:cancelled>
```

## CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE

```
<btp:confirm-one-phase id?>
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
  <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
    ...qualifiers...
</btp:qualifiers>
<btp:target-additional-information> ?
  ...additional address information...
</btp:target-additional-information>
<btp:sender-address> ?
  ...address...
</btp:sender-address>
</btp:confirm-one-phase>
```

## HAZARD

```
<btp:hazard id?>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>

  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
  <btp:level>mixed|possible</btp:level>
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
    ...qualifiers...
</btp:qualifiers>
<btp:target-additional-information> ?
  ...additional address information...
</btp:target-additional-information>
<btp:sender-address> ?
  ...address...
</btp:sender-address>
</btp:hazard>
```



4749  
4750  
4751  
4752  
4753  
4754  
4755  
4756  
4757  
4758  
4759  
4760  
4761  
4762  
4763  
4764  
4765

## CONTRADICTION

```
<btp:contradiction id?>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:sender-address> ?  
    ...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:contradiction>
```

4766  
4767  
4768  
4769  
4770  
4771  
4772  
4773  
4774  
4775  
4776  
4777  
4778  
4779  
4780  
4781  
4782  
4783  
4784

## SUPERIOR\_STATE

```
<btp:superior-state id?>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:status>active|prepared-  
received|inaccessible|unknown</btp:status>  
  <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:sender-address> ?  
    ...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:superior-state>
```

4785  
4786  
4787  
4788  
4789  
4790  
4791  
4792  
4793  
4794  
4795  
4796  
4797  
4798  
4799

## INFERIOR\_STATE

```
<btp:inferior-state id?>  
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>  
  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:status>active|inaccessible|unknown</btp:status>  
  <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:sender-address> ?
```

```
4800     ...address...
4801     </btp:sender-address>
4802 </btp:inferior-state>
```

## 4805 REDIRECT

```
4806
4807 <btp:redirect id?>
4808   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier> ?
4809   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4810   <btp:old-address> +
4811     ...address...
4812   </btp:old-address>
4813   <btp:new-address> +
4814     ...address...
4815   </btp:new-address>
4816   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4817     ...qualifiers...
4818   </btp:qualifiers>
4819   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4820     ...additional address information...
4821   </btp:target-additional-information>
4822 </btp:redirect>
```

## 4824 BEGIN

```
4825
4826 <btp:begin id?>
4827   <btp:transaction-type>cohesion|atom</btp:transaction-type>
4828   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4829     ...qualifiers...
4830   </btp:qualifiers>
4831   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4832     ...additional address information...
4833   </btp:target-additional-information>
4834   <btp:reply-address> ?
4835     ...address...
4836   </btp:reply-address>
4837 </btp:begin>
```

## 4840 BEGUN

```
4841
4842 <btp:begun id?>
4843   <btp:decider-address> *
4844     ...address...
4845   </btp:decider-address>
4846   <btp:inferior-address> *
4847     ...address...
4848   </btp:inferior-address>
4849   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
4850   identifier>
```

```
4851 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4852   ...qualifiers...
4853 </btp:qualifiers>
4854 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4855   ...additional address information...
4856 </btp:target-additional-information>
4857 </btp:begin>
```

## 4860 PREPARE\_INFERIORS

```
4861
4862 <btp:prepare-inferiors id?>
4863   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
4864 identifier>
4865   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
4866     <btp:inferior-handle>...URI...</btp:inferior-handle> +
4867   </btp:inferiors-list>
4868   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4869     ...qualifiers...
4870   </btp:qualifiers>
4871   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4872     ...additional address information...
4873   </btp:target-additional-information>
4874   <btp:reply-address> ?
4875     ...address...
4876   </btp:reply-address>
4877 </btp:prepare-inferiors>
```

## 4880 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION

```
4881
4882 <btp:confirm-transaction id?>
4883   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
4884 identifier>
4885   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
4886     <btp:inferior-handle>...URI...</btp:inferior-handle> +
4887   </btp:inferiors-list>
4888   <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
4889   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4890     ...qualifiers...
4891   </btp:qualifiers>
4892   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4893     ...additional address information...
4894   </btp:target-additional-information>
4895   <btp:reply-address> ?
4896     ...address...
4897   </btp:reply-address>
4898 </btp:confirm_transaction>
```

4899  
4900

4901  
4902  
4903  
4904  
4905  
4906  
4907  
4908  
4909  
4910  
4911  
4912  
4913  
4914  
4915  
4916  
4917  
4918  
4919  
4920  
4921  
4922  
4923  
4924  
4925  
4926  
4927  
4928  
4929  
4930  
4931  
4932  
4933  
4934  
4935  
4936  
4937  
4938  
4939  
4940  
4941  
4942  
4943  
4944  
4945  
4946  
4947  
4948  
4949  
4950  
4951

## TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED

```
<btp:transaction-confirmed id?>  
  <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-  
  identifier>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
  </btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
  </btp:target-additional-information>  
</btp:transaction-confirmed>
```

## CANCEL\_TRANSACTION

```
<btp:cancel-transaction id?>  
  <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-  
  identifier>  
  <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
  </btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
  </btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:reply-address> ?  
    ...address...  
  </btp:reply-address>  
</btp:cancel-transaction>
```

## CANCEL\_INFERIORS

```
<btp:cancel-inferiors id?>  
  <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-  
  identifier> ?  
  <btp:inferiors-list>  
    <btp:inferior-handle>...URI...</btp:inferior-handle> +  
  </btp:inferiors-list>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
  </btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
  </btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:reply-address> ?  
    ...address...  
  </btp:reply-address>  
</btp:cancel-inferiors>
```

4952  
4953  
4954  
4955  
4956  
4957  
4958  
4959  
4960  
4961  
4962  
4963  
4964  
4965  
4966  
4967  
4968  
4969  
4970  
4971  
4972  
4973  
4974  
4975  
4976  
4977  
4978  
4979  
4980  
4981  
4982  
4983  
4984  
4985  
4986  
4987  
4988  
4989  
4990  
4991  
4992  
4993  
4994  
4995  
4996  
4997  
4998  
4999  
5000  
5001  
5002  
5003

## TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED

```
<btpt:transaction-cancelled id?>  
  <btpt:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btpt:transaction-  
  identifier>  
  <btpt:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btpt:qualifiers>  
  <btpt:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btpt:target-additional-information>  
</btpt:transaction-cancelled>
```

## REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES

```
<btpt:request-inferior-statuses id?>  
  <btpt:target-identifier>...URI...</btpt:target-identifier>  
  <btpt:inferiors-list> ?  
    <btpt:inferior-handle>...URI...</btpt:inferior-handle> +  
</btpt:inferiors-list>  
  <btpt:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btpt:qualifiers>  
  <btpt:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btpt:target-additional-information>  
  <btpt:reply-address> ?  
    ...address...  
</btpt:reply-address>  
</btpt:request-inferior-statuses>
```

## INFERIOR\_STATUSES

```
<btpt:inferior-statuses id?>  
  <btpt:responders-identifier>...URI...</btpt:responders-identifier>  
  <btpt:status-list>  
    <btpt:status-item> +  
      <btpt:inferior-handle>...URI...</btpt:inferior-handle>  
      <btpt:status>active|resigned|preparing|prepared|  
      autonomously-confirmed|autonomously-cancelled|  
      confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|  
      cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|  
      hazard|invalid</btpt:status>  
      <btpt:qualifiers> ?  
        ...qualifiers...  
    </btpt:qualifiers>  
  </btpt:status-item>  
</btpt:status-list>  
<btpt:qualifiers> ?  
  ...qualifiers...
```

```
5004     </btp:qualifiers>
5005     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
5006         ...additional address information...
5007     </btp:target-additional-information>
5008 </btp:inferior-statuses>
5009
```

### 5010 **Standard qualifiers**

5011 The informal syntax for these messages assumes the namespace prefix “btpq” is associated  
5012 with the URI “urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers”.

### 5013 **Transaction timelimit**

```
5014
5015
5016     <btpq:transaction-timelimit>
5017         <btpq:timelimit>
5018             ...time in seconds...
5019         </btpq:timelimit>
5020     </btpq:transaction-timelimit>
5021
```

### 5022 **Inferior timeout**

```
5023     <btpq:inferior-timeout>
5024         <btpq:timeout>
5025             ...time in seconds...
5026         </btpq:timeout>
5027         <btpq:intended-decision>confirm|cancel</btpq:intended-decision>
5028     </btpq:inferior-timeout>
5029
```

### 5030 **Minimum inferior timeout**

```
5031     <btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>
5032         <btpq:minimum-timeout>
5033             ...time in seconds...
5034         </btpq:minimum-timeout>
5035     </btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>
5036
```

### 5037 **Inferior name**

```
5038     <btpq:inferior-name>
5039         <btpq:inferior-name>
5040             ...string...
5041         </btpq:inferior-name>
5042     </btpq:inferior-name>
5043
```

### 5044 **Compounding of Messages**

5045  
5046 Relating BTP to one another, in a “group” is represented by containing them within the  
5047 btp:related-group element, with the related messages as child elements. The processing for  
5048 the group is defined in the section “Groups – combinations of related messages”. For example

```
5049
5050     <btp:related-group>
5051         <btp:context-reply>
5052             ...<completion-status>related</completion-status> ...
5053         </btp:context-reply>
```

```
5054     <btp:enrol>...</btp:enrol>
5055     <btp:prepared>...</btp:prepared>
5056 </btp:related-group>
```

5058 If the rules for the group state that the “target-address” of the abstract message is omitted, the  
5059 corresponding target-address-information element shall be absent in the message in the  
5060 related-group. The carrier protocol binding specifies how a relation between application and  
5061 BTP messages is represented.

5062 Bundling (semantically insignificant combination) of BTP messages and related groups is  
5063 indicated with the "btp:messages" element, with the bundled messages and related groups as  
5064 child elements. For example (confirming one and cancelling another inferiors of a cohesion):  
5065

```
5066     <btp:messages>
5067         <btp:confirm>...</btp:confirm>
5068         <btp:cancel>...</btp:cancel>
5069     </btp:messages>
```

## 5074 XML Schemas

### 5075 XML schema for BTP messages

```
5076 <?xml version="1.0"?>
5077 <schema
5078     xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
5079     targetNamespace="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
5080     xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
5081     elementFormDefault="qualified">
5082
5083     <!-- Qualifiers -->
5084
5085     <complexType name="qualifier-type">
5086         <simpleContent>
5087             <extension base="string">
5088                 <attribute name="must-be-understood" type="boolean"/>
5089                 <attribute name="to-be-propagated" type="boolean"/>
5090             </extension>
5091         </simpleContent>
5092     </complexType>
5093
5094     <element name="qualifier" type="btp:qualifier-type" abstract="true"/>
5095
5096     <element name="qualifiers">
5097         <complexType>
5098             <sequence>
5099                 <element ref="btp:qualifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5100             </sequence>
5101         </complexType>
```

```

5105     </element>
5106
5107     <!-- example qualifier:
5108         <element name="some-qualifer" type="btp:qualifier-type"
5109 substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier"/>
5110     -->
5111
5112     <!-- Message set data types -->
5113
5114     <simpleType name="identifier">
5115         <restriction base="anyURI" />
5116     </simpleType>
5117
5118     <simpleType name="additional-information">
5119         <restriction base="string" />
5120     </simpleType>
5121
5122     <complexType name="address">
5123         <sequence>
5124             <element name="binding-name" type="anyURI"/>
5125             <element name="binding-address" type="string"/>
5126             <element name="additional-information" type="btp:additional-
5127 information" minOccurs="0" />
5128         </sequence>
5129     </complexType>
5130
5131     <simpleType name="superior-type">
5132         <restriction base="string">
5133             <enumeration value="cohesion"/>
5134             <enumeration value="atom"/>
5135         </restriction>
5136     </simpleType>
5137
5138     <simpleType name="transaction-type">
5139         <restriction base="string">
5140             <enumeration value="cohesion"/>
5141             <enumeration value="atom"/>
5142         </restriction>
5143     </simpleType>
5144
5145     <!-- Compounding -->
5146
5147     <element name="messages">
5148         <complexType>
5149             <sequence>
5150                 <element ref="btp:message" minOccurs="0"
5151 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5152             </sequence>
5153         </complexType>
5154     </element>
5155
5156
5157

```



```

5158     <element name="related-group" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5159         <complexType>
5160             <sequence>
5161                 <element ref="btp:message" minOccurs="0"
5162 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5163             </sequence>
5164         </complexType>
5165     </element>
5166
5167
5168     <!-- Message set -->
5169
5170     <element name="message" abstract="true" />
5171
5172     <element name="context" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5173         <complexType>
5174             <sequence>
5175                 <element name="superior-address" type="btp:address"
5176 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5177                 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5178                 <element name="superior-type" type="btp:superior-type"/>
5179                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5180                 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5181 minOccurs="0"/>
5182             </sequence>
5183             <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
5184         </complexType>
5185     </element>
5186
5187     <element name="context-reply" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5188         <complexType>
5189             <sequence>
5190                 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5191                 <element name="completion-status">
5192                     <simpleType>
5193                         <restriction base="string">
5194                             <enumeration value="completed"/>
5195                             <enumeration value="incomplete"/>
5196                             <enumeration value="related"/>
5197                             <enumeration value="repudiated"/>
5198                         </restriction>
5199                     </simpleType>
5200                 </element>
5201                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5202                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5203 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5204             </sequence>
5205             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5206         </complexType>
5207     </element>
5208
5209     <element name="request-status" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5210         <complexType>

```

```

5211         <sequence>
5212             <element name="target-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5213             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5214             <element name="target-additional-information"
5215 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5216             <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5217 minOccurs="0"/>
5218         </sequence>
5219         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5220     </complexType>
5221 </element>
5222
5223     <element name="status" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5224         <complexType>
5225             <sequence>
5226                 <element name="responders-identifier"
5227 type="btp:identifier"/>
5228                 <element name="status-value">
5229                     <simpleType>
5230                         <restriction base="string">
5231                             <enumeration value="created"/>
5232                             <enumeration value="enrolling"/>
5233                             <enumeration value="active"/>
5234                             <enumeration value="resigning"/>
5235                             <enumeration value="resigned"/>
5236                             <enumeration value="preparing"/>
5237                             <enumeration value="prepared"/>
5238                             <enumeration value="confirming"/>
5239                             <enumeration value="confirmed"/>
5240                             <enumeration value="cancelling"/>
5241                             <enumeration value="cancelled"/>
5242                             <enumeration value="cancel-contradiction"/>
5243                             <enumeration value="confirm-contradiction"/>
5244                             <enumeration value="hazard"/>
5245                             <enumeration value="contradicted"/>
5246                             <enumeration value="unknown"/>
5247                             <enumeration value="inaccessible"/>
5248                         </restriction>
5249                     </simpleType>
5250                 </element>
5251                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5252                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5253 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5254             </sequence>
5255             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5256         </complexType>
5257 </element>
5258
5259     <element name="fault" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5260         <complexType>
5261             <sequence>
5262                 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
5263 minOccurs="0"/>

```

```

5264         <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
5265 minOccurs="0"/>
5266         <element name="fault-type">
5267             <simpleType>
5268                 <restriction base="string">
5269                     <enumeration value="communication-failure"/>
5270                     <enumeration value="duplicate-inferior"/>
5271                     <enumeration value="general"/>
5272                     <enumeration value="invalid-decider"/>
5273                     <enumeration value="invalid-inferior"/>
5274                     <enumeration value="invalid-superior"/>
5275                     <enumeration value="status-refused"/>
5276                     <enumeration value="invalid-terminator"/>
5277                     <enumeration value="unknown-parameter"/>
5278                     <enumeration value="unknown-transaction"/>
5279                     <enumeration value="unsupported-qualifier"/>
5280                     <enumeration value="wrong-state"/>
5281                 </restriction>
5282             </simpleType>
5283         </element>
5284         <element name="fault-data" type="anyType" minOccurs="0"/>
5285         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5286         <element name="target-additional-information"
5287 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5288     </sequence>
5289     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5290 </complexType>
5291 </element>
5292
5293     <element name="enrol" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5294         <complexType>
5295             <sequence>
5296                 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5297                 <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"/>
5298                 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5299 minOccurs="0"/>
5300                 <element name="inferior-address" type="btp:address"
5301 minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5302                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5303                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5304                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5305 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5306             </sequence>
5307             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5308         </complexType>
5309     </element>
5310
5311     <element name="enrolled" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5312         <complexType>
5313             <sequence>
5314                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5315                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5316

```

```

5317         <element name="target-additional-information"
5318 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5319     </sequence>
5320     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5321 </complexType>
5322 </element>
5323
5324 <element name="resign" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5325     <complexType>
5326         <sequence>
5327             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5328             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5329             <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"/>
5330             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5331             <element name="target-additional-information"
5332 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5333         </sequence>
5334         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5335     </complexType>
5336 </element>
5337
5338 <element name="resigned" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5339     <complexType>
5340         <sequence>
5341             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5342             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5343             <element name="target-additional-information"
5344 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5345         </sequence>
5346         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5347     </complexType>
5348 </element>
5349
5350 <element name="prepare" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5351     <complexType>
5352         <sequence>
5353             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5354             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5355             <element name="target-additional-information"
5356 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5357         </sequence>
5358         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5359     </complexType>
5360 </element>
5361
5362 <element name="prepared" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5363     <complexType>
5364         <sequence>
5365             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5366             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5367             <element name="default-is-cancel" type="boolean"/>
5368             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>

```

```

5369         <element name="target-additional-information"
5370 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5371     </sequence>
5372     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5373 </complexType>
5374 </element>
5375
5376 <element name="confirm" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5377     <complexType>
5378         <sequence>
5379             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5380             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5381             <element name="target-additional-information"
5382 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5383         </sequence>
5384         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5385     </complexType>
5386 </element>
5387
5388 <element name="confirmed" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5389     <complexType>
5390         <sequence>
5391             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5392             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5393             <element name="confirmed-received" type="boolean"/>
5394             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5395             <element name="target-additional-information"
5396 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5397         </sequence>
5398         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5399     </complexType>
5400 </element>
5401
5402 <element name="cancel" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5403     <complexType>
5404         <sequence>
5405             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5406             <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5407 minOccurs="0"/>
5408             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5409             <element name="target-additional-information"
5410 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5411         </sequence>
5412         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5413     </complexType>
5414 </element>
5415
5416 <element name="cancelled" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5417     <complexType>
5418         <sequence>
5419             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5420             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
5421 minOccurs="0"/>

```

```

5422         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5423         <element name="target-additional-information"
5424 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5425     </sequence>
5426     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5427 </complexType>
5428 </element>
5429
5430 <element name="confirm-one-phase" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5431     <complexType>
5432         <sequence>
5433             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5434             <element name="report-hazard" type="boolean"/>
5435             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5436             <element name="target-additional-information"
5437 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5438         </sequence>
5439         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5440     </complexType>
5441 </element>
5442
5443 <element name="hazard" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5444     <complexType>
5445         <sequence>
5446             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5447             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5448             <element name="level">
5449                 <simpleType>
5450                     <restriction base="string">
5451                         <enumeration value="mixed"/>
5452                         <enumeration value="possible"/>
5453                     </restriction>
5454                 </simpleType>
5455             </element>
5456             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5457             <element name="target-additional-information"
5458 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5459         </sequence>
5460         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5461     </complexType>
5462 </element>
5463
5464 <element name="contradiction" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5465     <complexType>
5466         <sequence>
5467             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5468             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5469             <element name="target-additional-information"
5470 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5471         </sequence>
5472         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5473     </complexType>
5474 </element>

```

```

5475
5476 <element name="superior-state" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5477 <complexType>
5478 <sequence>
5479 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5480 <element name="status">
5481 <simpleType>
5482 <restriction base="string">
5483 <enumeration value="active"/>
5484 <enumeration value="prepared-received"/>
5485 <enumeration value="inaccessible"/>
5486 <enumeration value="unknown"/>
5487 </restriction>
5488 </simpleType>
5489 </element>
5490 <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"/>
5491 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5492 <element name="target-additional-information"
5493 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5494 </sequence>
5495 <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5496 </complexType>
5497 </element>
5498
5499 <element name="inferior-state" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5500 <complexType>
5501 <sequence>
5502 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5503 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5504 <element name="status">
5505 <simpleType>
5506 <restriction base="string">
5507 <enumeration value="active"/>
5508 <enumeration value="inaccessible"/>
5509 <enumeration value="unknown"/>
5510 </restriction>
5511 </simpleType>
5512 </element>
5513 <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"/>
5514 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5515 <element name="target-additional-information"
5516 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5517 </sequence>
5518 <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5519 </complexType>
5520 </element>
5521
5522 <element name="redirect" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5523 <complexType>
5524 <sequence>
5525 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
5526 minOccurs="0"/>

```

```

5527         <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
5528 />
5529         <element name="old-address" type="btp:address"
5530 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5531         <element name="new-address" type="btp:address"
5532 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5533         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5534         <element name="target-additional-information"
5535 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5536     </sequence>
5537     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5538 </complexType>
5539 </element>
5540
5541
5542     <element name="begin" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5543         <complexType>
5544             <sequence>
5545                 <element name="transaction-type" type="btp:superior-type"/>
5546                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5547                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5548 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5549                 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5550 minOccurs="0"/>
5551             </sequence>
5552             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5553         </complexType>
5554     </element>
5555
5556     <element name="begun" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5557         <complexType>
5558             <sequence>
5559                 <element name="decider-address" type="btp:address"
5560 minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5561                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
5562 type="btp:identifier" minOccurs="0"/>
5563                 <element name="inferior-handle" type="btp:identifier"
5564 minOccurs="0"/>
5565                 <element name="inferior-address" type="btp:address"
5566 minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5567                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5568                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5569 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5570             </sequence>
5571             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5572         </complexType>
5573     </element>
5574
5575     <element name="prepare-inferiors" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5576         <complexType>
5577             <sequence>
5578                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
5579 type="btp:identifier"/>

```



```

5580         <element name="inferiors-list" minOccurs="0">
5581             <complexType>
5582                 <sequence>
5583                     <element name="inferior-handle"
5584 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5585                 </sequence>
5586             </complexType>
5587         </element>
5588         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5589         <element name="target-additional-information"
5590 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5591         <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5592 minOccurs="0"/>
5593     </sequence>
5594     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5595 </complexType>
5596 </element>
5597
5598     <element name="confirm-transaction" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5599         <complexType>
5600             <sequence>
5601                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
5602 type="btp:identifier"/>
5603                 <element name="inferiors-list" minOccurs="0">
5604                     <complexType>
5605                         <sequence>
5606                             <element name="inferior-handle"
5607 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5608                         </sequence>
5609                     </complexType>
5610                 </element>
5611                 <element name="report-hazard" type="boolean"/>
5612                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5613                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5614 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5615                 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5616 minOccurs="0"/>
5617             </sequence>
5618             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5619         </complexType>
5620     </element>
5621
5622     <element name="transaction-confirmed" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5623         <complexType>
5624             <sequence>
5625                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
5626 type="btp:identifier"/>
5627                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5628                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5629 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5630             </sequence>
5631             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5632         </complexType>

```

```

5633     </element>
5634
5635     <element name="cancel-transaction" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5636         <complexType>
5637             <sequence>
5638                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
5639 type="btp:identifier"/>
5640                 <element name="report-hazard" type="boolean"/>
5641                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5642                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5643 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5644                 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5645 minOccurs="0"/>
5646             </sequence>
5647             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5648         </complexType>
5649     </element>
5650
5651     <element name="cancel-inferiors" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5652         <complexType>
5653             <sequence>
5654                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
5655 type="btp:identifier" minOccurs="0"/>
5656                 <element name="inferiors-list">
5657                     <complexType>
5658                         <sequence>
5659                             <element name="inferior-handle"
5660 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5661                         </sequence>
5662                     </complexType>
5663                 </element>
5664                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5665                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5666 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5667                 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5668 minOccurs="0"/>
5669             </sequence>
5670             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5671         </complexType>
5672     </element>
5673
5674     <element name="transaction-cancelled" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5675         <complexType>
5676             <sequence>
5677                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
5678 type="btp:identifier"/>
5679                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5680                 <element name="target-additional-information"
5681 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5682             </sequence>
5683             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5684         </complexType>
5685     </element>

```

```

5686
5687     <element name="request-inferior-statuses"
5688 substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5689     <complexType>
5690         <sequence>
5691             <element name="target-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5692             <element name="inferiors-list" minOccurs="0">
5693                 <complexType>
5694                     <sequence>
5695                         <element name="inferior-handle"
5696 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5697                     </sequence>
5698                 </complexType>
5699             </element>
5700             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5701             <element name="target-additional-information"
5702 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5703             <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
5704 minOccurs="0"/>
5705         </sequence>
5706         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5707     </complexType>
5708 </element>
5709
5710     <element name="inferior-statuses" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
5711     <complexType>
5712         <sequence>
5713             <element name="responders-identifier"
5714 type="btp:identifier"/>
5715             <element name="status-list">
5716                 <complexType>
5717                     <sequence>
5718                         <element name="status-item" maxOccurs="unbounded">
5719                             <complexType>
5720                                 <sequence>
5721                                     <element name="inferior-handle"
5722 type="btp:identifier"/>
5723                                 <element name="status">
5724                                     <simpleType>
5725                                         <restriction base="string">
5726                                             <enumeration value="active"/>
5727                                             <enumeration value="resigned"/>
5728                                             <enumeration value="preparing"/>
5729                                             <enumeration value="prepared"/>
5730                                             <enumeration value="autonomously-confirmed"/>
5731                                             <enumeration value="autonomously-cancelled"/>
5732                                             <enumeration value="confirming"/>
5733                                             <enumeration value="confirmed"/>
5734                                             <enumeration value="cancelling"/>
5735                                             <enumeration value="cancelled"/>
5736                                             <enumeration value="cancel-contradiction"/>
5737                                             <enumeration value="confirm-contradiction"/>
5738                                             <enumeration value="hazard"/>

```

```

5739         <enumeration value="invalid"/>
5740     </restriction>
5741     </simpleType>
5742 </element>
5743     <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5744 </sequence>
5745 </complexType>
5746 </element>
5747 </sequence>
5748 </complexType>
5749 </element>
5750 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5751 <element name="target-additional-information"
5752 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
5753 </sequence>
5754 <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
5755 </complexType>
5756 </element>
5757
5758
5759 </schema>

```

### XML schema for standard qualifiers

```

5760
5761
5762
5763 <?xml version="1.0"?>
5764 <schema
5765     xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
5766     targetNamespace="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"
5767     xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"
5768     xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
5769     elementFormDefault="qualified">
5770
5771
5772     <element name="transaction-timelimit"
5773 substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
5774         <complexType>
5775             <complexContent>
5776                 <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
5777                     <sequence>
5778                         <element name="timelimit"
5779 type="nonNegativeInteger"/>
5780                     </sequence>
5781                 </extension>
5782             </complexContent>
5783         </complexType>
5784     </element>
5785
5786     <element name="inferior-timeout" substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
5787         <complexType>
5788             <complexContent>
5789                 <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
5790                     <sequence>

```

```

5791         <element name="timelimit"
5792 type="nonNegativeInteger"/>
5793         <element name="intended-decision">
5794             <simpleType>
5795                 <restriction base="string">
5796                     <enumeration value="confirm"/>
5797                     <enumeration value="cancel"/>
5798                 </restriction>
5799             </simpleType>
5800         </element>
5801     </sequence>
5802 </extension>
5803 </complexContent>
5804 </complexType>
5805 </element>
5806
5807     <element name="minimum-inferior-timeout"
5808 substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
5809         <complexType>
5810             <complexContent>
5811                 <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
5812                     <sequence>
5813                         <element name="minimum-timeout"
5814 type="nonNegativeInteger"/>
5815                     </sequence>
5816                 </extension>
5817             </complexContent>
5818         </complexType>
5819     </element>
5820
5821     <element name="inferior-name" substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
5822         <complexType>
5823             <complexContent>
5824                 <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
5825                     <sequence>
5826                         <element name="inferior-name" type="string"/>
5827                     </sequence>
5828                 </extension>
5829             </complexContent>
5830         </complexType>
5831     </element>
5832
5833 </schema>
5834

```

5834

## 5835 **Carrier Protocol Bindings**

5836

5837 The notion of bindings is introduced to act as the glue between the BTP messages and an  
5838 underlying transport. A binding specification must define various particulars of how the BTP  
5839 messages are carried and some aspects of how the related application messages are carried.  
5840 This document specifies two bindings: a SOAP binding and a SOAP + Attachments binding.  
5841 However, other bindings could be specified by the Oasis BTP technical committee or by a  
5842 third party. For example, in the future a binding might exist to put a BTP message directly on  
5843 top of HTTP without the use of SOAP, or a closed community could define their own  
5844 binding. To ensure that such specifications are complete, the Binding Proforma defines the  
5845 information that must be included in a binding specification.  
5846

### 5847 **Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma**

5848

5849 A BTP carrier binding specification should provide the following information:

5850

5851 **Binding name:** A name for the binding, as used in the “binding name” field of BTP  
5852 addresses (and available for declaring the capabilities of an implementation). Binding  
5853 specified in this document, and future revisions of this document have binding names that are  
5854 simple strings of letters, numbers and hyphens (and, in particular, do not contain colons).  
5855 Bindings specified elsewhere shall have binding names that are URIs. Bindings specified in  
5856 this document use numbers to identify the version of the binding, not the version(s) of the  
5857 carrier protocol.

5858

5859 **Binding address format:** This section states the format of the “binding address” field of a  
5860 BTP address for this binding. For many bindings, this will be a URL of some kind; for other  
5861 bindings it may be some other form

5862

5863 **BTP message representation:** This section will define how BTP messages are represented.  
5864 For many bindings, the BTP message syntax will be as specified in the XML schema defined  
5865 in this document, and the normal string encoding of that XML will be used.

5866

5867 **Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated) :** This section will define how BTP messages that  
5868 are not related to application messages are sent in either direction between Superior and  
5869 Inferior. (i.e. those messages sent directly between BTP actors). This mapping need not be  
5870 symmetric (i.e. Superior to Inferior may differ to some degree to Inferior to Superior). The  
5871 mapping may define particular rules for particular BTP messages, or messages with particular  
5872 parameter values (e.g. the FAULT message with “fault-type” “CommunicationFailure” will  
5873 typically not be sent as a BTP message). The mapping states any constraints or requirements  
5874 on which BTP may or must be bundled together by compounding.

5875

5876 **Mapping for BTP messages related to application messages:** This section will define how  
5877 BTP messages that are related to application messages are sent. A binding specification may  
5878 defer details of this to a particular application (e.g. a mapping specification could just say  
5879 “the CONTEXT may be carried as a parameter of an application invocation”). Alternatively,

5880 the binding may specify a general method that represents the relationship between application  
5881 and BTP messages.

5882

5883 **Implicit messages:** This section specifies which BTP messages, if any, are not sent explicitly  
5884 but are treated as implicit in carrier-protocol mechanisms, application messages or other BTP  
5885 messages. This may depend on particular parameter values of the BTP messages or the  
5886 application messages.

5887

5888 **Faults:** The relationship between the fault and exception reporting mechanisms of the carrier  
5889 protocol and of BTP shall be defined. This may include definition of which carrier protocol  
5890 exceptions are equivalent to a FAULT/communication-failure message.

5891

5892 **Relationship to other bindings:** Any relationship to other bindings is defined in this section.  
5893 If BTP addresses with different bindings are be considered to match (for purposes of  
5894 identifying the peer Superior/Inferior and redirection), this should be specified here.

5895

5896 **Limitations on BTP use:** Any limitations on the full range of BTP functionality that are  
5897 imposed by use of this binding should be listed. This would include limitations on which  
5898 messages can be sent, which event sequences are supported and restrictions on parameter  
5899 values. Such limitations may reduce the usefulness of an implementation, but may be  
5900 appropriate in certain environments.

5901

5902 **Other:** Other features of the binding, especially any that will potentially affect interoperation  
5903 should be specified here. This may include restrictions or requirements on the use or support  
5904 of optional carrier parameters or mechanisms or use of standard or other qualifiers.

5905

## 5906 **Bindings for request/response carrier protocols**

5907

5908 BTP does not generally follow a request/response pattern. In particular, on the outcome  
5909 relationship either side may initiate a message – this is an essential part of the presume-abort  
5910 recovery paradigm although it is not limited to recovery cases. However, there are some BTP  
5911 messages, especially in the control relationship, that do have a request/response pattern.  
5912 Many (potential) carrier protocols (e.g. HTTP) do have a request/response pattern. The  
5913 specification of a binding specification to a request/response carrier protocol needs to state  
5914 what rules apply – which messages can be carried by requests, which by responses. The  
5915 simplest rule is to send all BTP messages on requests, and let the carrier responses travel back  
5916 empty. This would be inefficient in use of network resources, and possibly inconvenient  
5917 when used for the BTP request/response pairs.

5918

5919 This section defines a set of rules that allow more efficient use of the carrier, while allowing  
5920 the initiator of a BTP request/response pair to ensure the BTP response is sent back on the  
5921 carrier response. These rules are specified in this section to enable binding specifications to  
5922 reference them, without requiring each binding specification to repeat similar information.  
5923 These rules also allow the receiver of a message between Superior and Inferior (in either  
5924 direction) on a carrier protocol request to send any reply message on the carrier response –  
5925 the “sender-address” field is implicitly considered to be that of the sender of the carrier  
5926 request.

5927  
5928  
5929  
5930  
5931  
5932  
5933  
5934  
5935  
5936  
5937  
5938  
5939  
5940  
5941  
5942  
5943  
5944  
5945  
5946  
5947  
5948  
5949  
5950  
5951  
5952  
5953  
5954  
5955  
5956  
5957  
5958  
5959  
5960  
5961  
5962  
5963  
5964  
5965  
5966  
5967  
5968  
5969  
5970  
5971  
5972  
5973

A binding to a request/response carrier is not required to use these rules. It may define other rules.

### Request/response exploitation rules

These rules allow implementations to use the request and response of the carrier protocol efficiently, and, when a BTP request/response exchange occurs, to either treat the request/response exchanges of the carrier protocol and of BTP independently, if both sides wish, or allow either side to map them closely.

Under these rules, an implementation sending a BTP request (i.e. a message, other than CONTEXT, which has “reply-address” as a parameter in the abstract message definition), can ensure that it and the reply map to a carrier request/response by supplying no value for the “reply-address”. An implementation receiving such a request is required to send the BTP response on the carrier response.

Conversely, if an implementation does supply a “reply-address” value on the request, the receiver has the option of sending the BTP response back on the carrier response, or sending it on a new carrier request.

Within the outcome relationship, apart from ENROL, there is no “reply-address”, and the parties normally know each other’s “superior-address” and “inferior-address”. However, these messages have a “sender-address”, which is used when the receiver does not have knowledge of the peer. In this case, the “sender-address” is treated as the “reply-address” of the other messages – if the field is absent in a message on a carrier request, the “sender-address” is implicitly that of the request sender. Any message for the peer (including the three messages mentioned, FAULT but also any other valid message in the Superior:Inferior relationship) may be sent on the carrier response. Apart from this, both sides are permitted to treat the carrier request/response exchanges as opportunities for sending messages to the appropriate destination.

The rules:

- a) A BTP actor **may** bundle one or more BTP messages and related groups that have the same binding address for their target in a single `btpr:messages` and transmit this `btpr:messages` element on a carrier protocol request. There is no restriction on which combinations of messages and groups may be so bundled, other than that they have the same binding address, and that this binding address is usable as the destination of a carrier protocol request.
- b) A BTP actor that has received a carrier protocol request to which it has not yet responded, and which has one or more BTP messages and groups whose binding address for the target matches the origin of the carrier request **may** bundle such BTP messages in a single `btpr:messages` element and transmit that on the carrier protocol response.



- 5974  
5975  
5976  
5977  
5978  
5979  
5980  
5981  
5982  
5983  
5984  
5985  
5986  
5987  
5988  
5989  
5990  
5991  
5992  
5993  
5994  
5995  
5996  
5997  
5998  
5999  
6000  
6001  
6002  
6003  
6004  
6005  
6006
- c) A BTP actor that has received, on a carrier protocol request, one or more BTP messages or related groups that require a BTP response and for which no “reply-address” was supplied, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a btp:messages element and transmit this element on the carrier protocol response to the request that carried the BTP request.
  - d) A BTP actor that has received, on a carrier protocol request, one or more BTP messages or related groups that, as abstract messages, have a “sender-address” parameter but no “reply-address” was supplied and does not have knowledge of the peer address, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a btp:messages element and transmit this element on the carrier protocol response to the request that carried the BTP request. If the actor does have knowledge of the peer address it **may** send one or messages for the peer in the carrier protocol response, regardless of whether the binding address of the peer matches the address of the carrier protocol requestor.
  - e) Where only one message or group is to be sent, it shall be contained within a btp:messages element, as a bundle of one element.
  - f) A BTP actor that receives a carrier protocol request carrying BTP messages that do have a “reply-address”, or which initiate processing that produces BTP messages whose target binding address matches the origin of the request, **may** freely choose whether to use the carrier protocol response for the replies, or to send back an “empty carrier protocol response”, and send the BTP replies in a separately initiated carrier protocol request. The characteristics of an “empty carrier protocol response” shall be stated in the particular binding specification.
  - g) A BTP actor that sends BTP messages on a carrier protocol request **must** be able to accept returning BTP messages on the corresponding carrier protocol response and, if the actor has offered an address on which it will receive carrier requests, must be able to accept “replying” BTP messages on a separate carrier protocol request.

## 6007 SOAP Binding

6008  
6009 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the [SOAP 1.1](#)  
6010 specification, using the SOAP literal messaging style conventions. If no application message  
6011 is sent at the same time, the BTP messages are contained within the SOAP Body element. If  
6012 application messages are sent, the BTP messages are contained in the SOAP Header element.  
6013

6014 **Binding name:** soap-http-1

6015  
6016 **Binding address format:** shall be a URL, of type HTTP.  
6017

6018 **BTP message representation:** The string representation of the XML, as specified in the  
6019 XML schema defined in this document shall be used. The BTP XML messages are embedded

6020 in the SOAP message without the use of any specific encoding rules (literal style SOAP  
6021 message); hence the encodingStyle attribute need not be set or can be set to an empty string.

6022

6023 **Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated):** The “request/response exploitation” rules shall be  
6024 used.

6025

6026 BTP messages sent on an HTTP request or HTTP response which is not carrying an  
6027 application message, the messages are contained in a single btp:messages element which is  
6028 the immediate child element of the SOAP Body element.

6029

6030 An “empty carrier protocol response” sent after receiving an HTTP request containing a  
6031 btp:messages element in the SOAP Body and the implementation BTP actor chooses just to  
6032 reply at the lower level (and when the request/response exploitation rules allow an empty  
6033 carrier protocol response), shall be any of:

6034

a) an empty HTTP response

6035

b) an HTTP response containing an empty SOAP Envelope

6036

c) an HTTP response containing a SOAP Envelope containing a single, empty  
6037 btp:messages element.

6038

6039 The receiver (the initial sender of the HTTP request) shall treat these in the same way – they  
6040 have no effect on the BTP sequence (other than indicating that the earlier sending did not  
6041 cause a communication failure.)

6042

6043 If an application message is being sent at the same time, the mapping for related messages  
6044 shall be used, as if the BTP messages were related to the application message. (There is no  
6045 ambiguity in whether the BTP messages are related, because only CONTEXT and ENROL  
6046 can be related to an application message.)

6047

6048 **Mapping for BTP messages related to application messages:** All BTP messages sent with  
6049 an application message, whether related to the application message or not, shall be sent in a  
6050 single btp:messages element in the SOAP Header. There shall be precisely one btp:messages  
6051 element in the SOAP Header.

6052

6053 The “request/response exploitation” rules shall apply to the BTP messages carried in the  
6054 SOAP Header, as if they had been carried in a SOAP Body, unrelated to an application  
6055 message, sent to the same binding address.

6056

---

Note – The application protocol itself (which is using the SOAP Body) may  
6057 use the SOAP RPC or document approach – this is determined by the  
6058 application.

---

6059

6060 Only CONTEXT and ENROL messages are related (&) to application messages. If there is  
6061 only one CONTEXT or one ENROL message present in the SOAP Header, it is assumed to  
6062 be related to the whole of the application message in the SOAP Body. If there are multiple  
6063 CONTEXT or ENROL messages, any relation of these BTP messages shall be indicated by  
application specific means.

---

6064 Note 1 – An application protocol could use references to the ID values of the  
6065 BTP messages to indicate relation between BTP CONTEXT or ENROL  
6066 messages and the application message.

6067 Note 2 -- However indicated, what the relatedness means, or even whether it  
6068 has any significance at all, is a matter for the application.

---

6069  
6070 **Implicit messages:** A SOAP FAULT, or other communication failure received in response to  
6071 a SOAP request that had a CONTEXT in the SOAP Header shall be treated as if a  
6072 CONTEXT\_REPLY/repudiated had been received. See also the discussion under “other”  
6073 about the SOAP mustUnderstand attribute.  
6074

6075 **Faults:** A SOAP FAULT or other communication failure shall be treated as  
6076 FAULT/communication-failure.  
6077

6078 **Relationship to other bindings:** A BTP address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding  
6079 string “soap-http-1” is considered to match one that has the binding string “soap-attachments-  
6080 http-1” if the binding address and additional information fields match.  
6081

6082 **Limitations on BTP use:** None  
6083

6084 **Other:** The SOAP BTP binding does not make use of SOAPAction HTTP header or actor  
6085 attribute. The SOAPAction HTTP header is left to be application specific when there are  
6086 application messages in the SOAP Body, as an already existing web service that is being  
6087 upgraded to use BTP might have already made use of SOAPAction. The SOAPAction HTTP  
6088 header shall contain no value when the SOAP message carries only BTP messages in the  
6089 SOAP Body.  
6090

6091 The SOAP mustUnderstand attribute, when used on the btp:messages containing a BTP  
6092 CONTEXT, ensures that the receiver (server, as a whole) supports BTP sufficiently to  
6093 determine whether any enrolments are necessary and replies with CONTEXT\_REPLY as  
6094 appropriate. The sender of the CONTEXT (and related application message) can use this to  
6095 ensure that the application work is performed as part of the business transaction, assuming the  
6096 receiver’s SOAP implementation supports the mustUnderstand attribute. If mustUnderstand if  
6097 false, a receiver can ignore the CONTEXT (if BTP is not supported there), and no  
6098 CONTEXT\_REPLY will be returned. It is a local option on the sender (client) side whether  
6099 the absence of a CONTEXT\_REPLY is assumed to be equivalent to aCONTEXT\_REPLY/ok  
6100 (and the business transaction allowed to proceed to confirmation).  
6101

6102 Note – some SOAP implementations may not support the mustUnderstand attribute sufficiently to  
6103 enforce these requirements.

#### 6104 **Example scenario using SOAP binding** 6105

6106 The example below shows an application request with CONTEXT message sent from  
6107 client.example.com (which includes the Superior) to services.example.com (Service).  
6108

```

6109
6110 <soap:Envelope
6111     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
6112     soap:encodingStyle="">
6113
6114     <soap:Header>
6115
6116         <btp:messages xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core">
6117             <btp:context superior-type="atom">
6118                 <btp:superior-address>
6119                     <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
6120                     <btp:binding-
6121 address>http://client.example.com/soaphandler</btp:binding-
6122 address>
6123                     <btp:additional-information>btpengine</btp:additional-
6124 information>
6125                 </btp:superior-address>
6126                 <btp:superior-
6127 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
6128                 <btp:qualifiers>
6129                     <btpq:transaction-timelimit
6130 xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"><btpq:timelimit
6131 >1800</btpq:timelimit></btpq:transaction-timelimit>
6132                     </btp:qualifiers>
6133                 </btp:context>
6134             </btp:messages>
6135
6136         </soap:Header>
6137
6138         <soap:Body>
6139
6140             <ns1:orderGoods
6141 xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods">
6142                 <custID>ABC8329045</custID>
6143                 <itemID>224352</itemID>
6144                 <quantity>5</quantity>
6145             </ns1:orderGoods>
6146
6147         </soap:Body>
6148
6149     </soap:Envelope>
6150
6151

```

6152 The example below shows CONTEXT\_REPLY and a related ENROL message sent from
6153 services.example.com to client.example.com, in reply to the previous message. There is no
6154 application response, so the BTP messages are in the SOAP Body. The ENROL message
6155 does not contain the target-additional-information, since the grouping rules for
6156 CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL omit the “target-address” (the receiver of this example
6157 remembers the superior address from the original CONTEXT)
6158

```

6159 <soap:Envelope
6160     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"

```

```

6161     soap:encodingStyle="">
6162
6163     <soap:Header>
6164     </soap:Header>
6165
6166     <soap:Body>
6167
6168         <btp:messages xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core">
6169             <btp:related-group>
6170                 <btp:context-reply>
6171                     <btp:target-additional-information>btpengine</btp:target-
6172 additional-information>
6173                 <btp:superior-
6174 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
6175                 <completion-status>related</completion-status>
6176                 </btp:context-reply>
6177
6178                 <btp:enrol response-requested="false">
6179                     <btp:target-additional-
6180 information>btpengine</btp:target-additional-information>
6181                     <btp:superior-
6182 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
6183                     <btp:inferior-address>
6184                         <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
6185                         <btp:binding-address>
6186                             http://services.example.com/soaphandler
6187                         </btp:binding-address>
6188                     </btp:inferior-address>
6189                     <btp:inferior-identifier>
6190                         http://example.com/AAAB
6191                     </btp:inferior-identifier>
6192                 </btp:enrol>
6193
6194             </btp:related-group>
6195
6196         </btp:messages>
6197
6198     </soap:Body>
6199
6200 </soap:Envelope>

```

6201  
6202

### 6203 SOAP + Attachments Binding

6204

6205 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the [SOAP](#)  
6206 [Messages with Attachments](#) specification. It is a superset of the Basic SOAP binding, soap-  
6207 http-1. The two bindings only differ when application messages are sent.

6208

6209 **Binding name:** soap-attachments-http-1

6210

6211 **Binding address format:** as for soap-http-1

6212  
6213  
6214  
6215  
6216  
6217  
6218  
6219  
6220  
6221  
6222  
6223  
6224  
6225  
6226  
6227  
6228  
6229  
6230  
6231  
6232  
6233  
6234  
6235  
6236  
6237  
6238  
6239  
6240  
6241  
6242  
6243  
6244  
6245  
6246  
6247  
6248  
6249  
6250  
6251  
6252  
6253  
6254  
6255  
6256  
6257  
6258  
6259

**BTP message representation:** As for soap-http-1

**Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated):** As for “soap-http-1” , except the SOAP Envelope containing the SOAP Body containing the BTP messages shall be in a MIME body part, as specified in [SOAP Messages with Attachments](#) specification. If an application message is being sent at the same time, the mapping for related messages for this binding shall be used, as if the BTP messages were related to the application message(s).

**Mapping for BTP messages related to application messages:** MIME packaging shall be used. One of the MIME multipart/related parts shall contain a SOAP Envelope, whose SOAP Headers element shall contain precisely one btp:messages element, containing any BTP messages. Any BTP CONTEXT in the btp:messages is considered to be related to the application message(s) in the SOAP Body, and to also any of the MIME parts referenced from the SOAP Body (using the “href” attribute).

**Implicit messages:** As for soap-http-1.

**Faults:** As for soap-http-1.

**Relationship to other bindings:** A BTP address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding string “soap-http-1” is considered to match one that has the binding string “soap-attachements-http-1” if the binding address and additional information fields match.

**Limitations on BTP use:** None

**Other:** As for soap-http-1

*Example using SOAP + Attachments binding*

```
Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary;
type=text/xml;
    start="someID"

--MIME_boundary
Content-Type: text/xml; charset=UTF-8
Content-ID: someID

<?xml version='1.0' ?>
<soap:Envelope
  xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
  soap:encodingStyle=" " >

  <soap:Header>

    <btp:messages xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core">
      <btp:context superior-type="atom">
        <btp:superior-address>
```

```
6260         <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
6261         <btp:binding-address>
6262             http://client.example.com/soaphandler
6263         </btp:binding-address>
6264         </btp:superior-address>
6265         <btp:superior-
6266 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
6267         </btp:context>
6268         </btp:messages>
6269
6270     </soap:Header>
6271
6272     <soap:Body>
6273         <orderGoods href="cid:anotherID"/>
6274     </soap:Body>
6275
6276 </soap:Envelope>
6277
6278 --MIME_boundary
6279 Content-Type: text/xml
6280 Content-ID: anotherID
6281
6282     <ns1:orderGoods
6283 xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods">
6284         <custID>ABC8329045</custID>
6285         <itemID>224352</itemID>
6286         <quantity>5</quantity>
6287     </ns1:orderGoods>
6288
6289
6290 --MIME_boundary--
6291
6292
```

## 6293 Conformance

6294  
6295 A BTP implementation need not implement all aspects of the protocol to be useful. The level  
6296 of conformance of an implementation is defined by which roles it can support using the  
6297 specified messages and carrier protocol bindings for interoperation with other  
6298 implementations.

6299  
6300 An implementation may implement the functionality of some roles in a non-interoperable  
6301 way – usually combining pairs of roles, such as Terminator and Decider. Such an  
6302 implementation is conformant in respect of the roles it does implement in accordance with  
6303 this specification.

6304  
6305 An implementation can state which aspects of the BTP specification it conforms to in terms of  
6306 which Roles it supports. Since most Roles cannot usefully be supported in isolation, the  
6307 following Role Groups can be used to describe implementation capabilities:.

6308

Role Group	Roles
Initiator/Terminator	Initiator Terminator
Cohesive Hub	Factory Composer (as Decider and Superior) Coordinator (as Decider and Superior) Sub-composer Sub-coordinator
Atomic Hub	Factory Coordinator Sub-coordinator
Cohesive Superior	Composer (as Superior only) Sub-Composer Coordinator (as Superior only) Sub-coordinator
Atomic Superior	Coordinator (as Superior only)) Sub-coordinator
Participant	Inferior Enroller

6309  
6310  
6311  
6312  
6313  
6314  
6315  
6316  
6317  
6318  
6319  
6320  
6321

The Role Groups occupy different positions within a business transaction tree and thus require presence of implementations supporting other Role Groups:

Initiator/Terminator uses control relationship to Atomic Hub or Cohesive Hub to initiate and control Atoms or Cohesions. Initiator/Terminator would typically be a library linked with application software.

Atomic Hub and Cohesive Hub would often be standalone servers.

Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior would provide the equivalent of Initiator/Terminator functionality by internal or proprietary means.



6322 Cohesive Hubs, Atomic Hubs, Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior use outcome  
6323 relationships to Participants and to each other.

6324  
6325 Participants will establish outcome relationships to implementations of any of the other  
6326 Role Groups except Initiator/Terminator. A Participant “covers” a resource or application  
6327 work of some kind. It should be noted that a Participant is unaffected by whether it is  
6328 enrolled in an Atom or Cohesion – it gets only a single outcome.

6329  
6330 An implementation may support one or more Role Groups. The following combinations are  
6331 defined as commonly expected conformance profiles, although other combinations or  
6332 selections are equally possible.

6333

<b>Conformance Profile</b>	<b>Role Groups</b>
<b>Participant Only</b>	Participant
<b>Atomic</b>	Atomic Superior Participant
<b>Cohesive</b>	Cohesive Superior Participant
<b>Atomic Coordination Hub</b>	Initiator/Terminator Atomic Coordination Hub Participant
<b>Cohesive Coordination Hub</b>	Initiator/Terminator Cohesive Coordination Hub Participant

6334

6335

6336 BTP has several features, such as optional parameters, that allow alternative implementation  
6337 architectures. Implementations should pay particular attention to avoid assuming their peers  
6338 have made the same implementation options as they have (e.g. an implementation that always  
6339 sends ENROL with the same inferior address and with the “reply-address” absent (because  
6340 the Inferior in all transactions are dealt with by the same addressable entity), must not assume  
6341 that the same is true of received ENROLs)

6342

6343

6343  
6344  
6345

## Part 3. Glossary

<b>Actor</b>	An entity that executes procedures, a software agent. (See also BTP Actor)
<b>Address</b>	An identifier for an endpoint.
<b>Application</b>	<p>An actor, which uses the Business Transaction Protocol (in the context of this specification).</p> <p>Also, a group of such actors, which may be distributed, that perform a common purpose.</p> <p>(When used in phrases such as “determined by the Application”, it is not relevant to BTP whether this is determined by the owner of a single system or is explicitly part of the contract that defines the distributed collaborative application. When it is necessary to distinguish the responsibilities of a single party, the term “Application element” is used.)</p>
<b>Application element</b>	An actor that communicates, using application protocols, with other application elements, as part of an overall distributed application. A single system may contain more than one application element.
<b>Application Endpoint</b>	An endpoint of an application message.
<b>Application Message</b>	A message produced by an application element and consumed by an application element.
<b>Application Operation</b>	An operation, which is started when an application message arrives.
<b>Appropriate</b>	In accordance with a pertinent contract or specification.
<b>Atom</b>	A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a node (which may have only one member), all of which will receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous outcome. That is they will be issued instructions to all confirm or all cancel. (Transitively, a set of operations whose effect is capable of counter effect.)

**Atomic Business Transaction**

A complete business transaction that follows the atom rules for every node in the transaction tree over space and time, so that all the participants in the transaction will receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous outcome. That is they will be issued instructions to all confirm or all cancel. (Transitively, a set of operations whose effect is capable of counter effect.)

**Become prepared**

Ensure that of a set of procedures is capable of being successfully instructed to cancel or to confirm.

**BTP Actor**

A software entity, or agent, that is able to take part in Business Transaction Protocol exchanges i.e. that sends or receives BTP messages. A BTP Actor may be capable of only playing a single role, or of playing several different roles concurrently and / or sequentially. A BTP Actor may be involved in one, or more, transactions, concurrently and / or sequentially.

**BTP element**

A BTP actor that supports an application element (or elements) but is not itself concerned with application messages or semantics.

**(Business) Application Protocol**

The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences used to effect a change in the state of a business relationship.

**(Business) application system**

A system that contains one, or more, business applications, and resources such as volatile and persistent storage for business state information. It may also contain other things such as an operating system and BTP elements.

**Business relationship agreement**

The contract and / or set of agreements that govern and constrain a business relationship between two, or more, parties.

**Business relationship**

A *business relationship* is any distributed state held by the parties, which is subject to contractual constraints agreed by those parties.

**Business Transaction Protocol (BTP)**

The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences defined in this specification. Its purpose is to provide the interactions (or signalling) required to coordinate the effects of application protocol to achieve a business transaction.

**BTP-Address**

A compound address consisting of three parts. The first part, the “binding name”, identifies the binding to a particular carrier protocol – some bindings are specified in this document, others can be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the “binding address”, is meaningful to the carrier protocol itself, which will use it for the communication (i.e. it will permit a message to be delivered to a receiver). The third part, “additional information”, is not used or understood by the carrier protocol. The “additional information” may be a structured value.

**Business transaction**

A set of state changes that occur, or are desired, in computer systems controlled by some set of parties, and these changes are related in some application defined manner. A *business transaction* is subject to, and a part of, a *business relationship*. (BTP assumes that the parties involved in a *business transaction* have distinct and autonomous application systems, which do not require knowledge of each others’ implementation or internal state representations in volatile or persistent storage. Access to such loosely coupled systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.)

**Cancel**

Process a counter effect for the current effect of a set of procedures. There are a number of different ways that this may be achieved in practice.

**Carrier Protocol**

A protocol, which defines how the transmission of BTP messages occur.

**Carrier Protocol Address (CPA)**

The address of an endpoint for a particular carrier protocol.

**Client**

An actor, which sends application messages to services.

**Cohesion**

A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a node that may receive instructions that may result in different outcomes for each participant. That is they will be issued instructions to confirm or cancel according to the application logic. Participants may resign or be instructed to cancel until the confirm set is fixed. Once the confirm set for a cohesion is fixed, then all participants in the confirm set are treated atomically. That is they will all be instructed to confirm unless one, or more, cancel in which case all will be instructed to cancel. All participants not in the confirm set will be instructed to cancel.

<b>Cohesive Business Transaction</b>	A complete business transaction for which at least one node over space and time follows the cohesion rules. The other nodes in the transaction tree of a cohesive business transaction may follow either the cohesion rules or the atom rules.
<b>Confirm</b>	Ensure that the effect of a set of procedures is completed. There are a number of different ways that this may be achieved in practice.
<b>Context</b>	Information pertinent to a single transaction, or branch of a transaction.
<b>Contract</b>	Any rule, agreement or promise which constrains an actor's behaviour and is known to any other actor, and upon which any other knowing actor may rely.
<b>Control relationship</b>	The application element:BTP element relationships that create the nodes of the transaction tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).
<b>Coordinator</b>	A BTP actor, which is the top 'node' of a transaction and decides the outcome of its immediate branches according to the atom rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of the atom. A coordinator can issue instructions to prepare, cancel and confirm. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A coordinator is identified by its transaction-identifier. A coordinator must also have a BTP Address to which participants can send BTP messages.
<b>Counter effect</b>	An appropriate effect intended to counteract a prior effect.
<b>Counter effect contract</b>	The contract, which governs the relationship between the effect and the counter effect of a procedure. In the absence of any other overriding contracts the counter effect contract is the promise that the <b>Counter effect</b> will attempt so far as is possible to reverse or cancel the <b>Effect</b> such that an observer (on completion of the <b>Counter effect</b> ) is unaware that the <b>Effect</b> ever occurred, but this attempt cannot be guaranteed to succeed.

<b>Decider</b>	<p>The top node of a transaction tree, a composer or a coordinator (so called because the Terminator can only request confirmation – the Decider makes the final determination). The term can always be interpreted as “Composer or Coordinator”.</p> <p>It is the role at the other end of a control relationship to a Terminator.</p>
<b>Delivery parameter</b>	<p>A parameter of an abstract message that is concerned with the transmission of the message to its target or the transmission of an immediate reply.. Distinguished from Payload parameter.</p>
<b>Effect</b>	<p>The changes induced by the incomplete or complete processing of a set of procedures by an actor, which are observable by another contemporary or future actor, and which are made in conformance with a contract known to any such observer. This contract must state the counter effect of the effect, and this is known as a counter effect contract. An effect is <b>Completed</b> when the change inducing processing of the set of procedures is finished.</p>
<b>Endpoint</b>	<p>A sender or receiver.</p>
<b>Enroller</b>	<p>The BTP Actor role that informs a superior of the existence of an inferior.</p>
<b>Factory</b>	<p>The BTP Actor role that creates transaction contexts and deciders.</p>
<b>Inappropriate</b>	<p>In violation of a pertinent contract or specification.</p>
<b>Ineffectual</b>	<p>Describes a set of procedures, which has no effect.</p>
<b>Inferior</b>	<p>The end of end of a BTP node to BTP node relationship governed by the outcome protocol that is topologically further from the top of the transaction tree.</p>
<b>Inferior-Address</b>	<p>The address used to communicate with an actor playing the role of an Inferior.</p>
<b>Inferior-identifier</b>	<p>A globally unambiguous identification of a particular Inferior within a single transaction (represented as an URI or equivalent).</p>
<b>Initiator</b>	<p>The BTP Actor role (an application element) that starts a transaction.</p>

<b>Intermediate</b>	A node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to interposed.
<b>Interposed</b>	A node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to intermediate.
<b>Message</b>	A datum, which is produced and then consumed.
<b>Node</b>	A logical entity that is associated with a single transaction. A node is a composer, a coordinator, a sub-coordinator, a sub-composer, or a participant.
<b>Operation</b>	A procedure, which is started by a receiver when a message arrives at it.
<b>Outcome</b>	A decision to either cancel or confirm.
<b>Outcome relationship</b>	The Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP actors within the transaction tree) and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it.
<b>Participant</b>	A participant is part of an application system that also contains one, or more, applications, which manipulate resources. It is a role of a BTP Actor that is (or is equivalent to) a set of procedures, which is capable of receiving instructions from another BTP Actor to prepare, cancel and confirm. These signals are used by the application(s) to determine whether to effect (confirm) or counter effect (cancel) the results of application operations. A participant must also have a BTP Address, to which these instructions will be delivered, in the form of BTP messages. A participant is identified by an inferior-identifier.
<b>Payload parameter</b>	A parameter of an abstract message that is will be received and processed or retained by the receiving BTP actor. The various identifier parameters are considered Payload parameters . Distinguished from Delivery parameter.
<b>Peer</b>	The other party in a two-party relationship, as in Superior to Inferior, or Sender to Receiver.
<b>Provisional Effect</b>	The changes induced by the incomplete or complete processing of a set of procedures by an actor, which are subject to later completion or counter-effecting. The provisional effect may or may not be observable by other actors.

<b>Receiver</b>	The consumer of a message.
<b>Relationship parties</b>	The legal entities that enter into an agreement that forms the basis of the relationship.
<b>Responders-identifier</b>	An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a superior-identifier, or an inferior-identifier according to the nature of the role in a BTP actor that is responding to a received message.
<b>Role</b>	The participation of a software agent in a particular relationship in a particular business transaction. The software agent performing a role is termed an <b>Actor</b> .
<b>Sender</b>	The producer of a message.
<b>Service</b>	An actor (an application element), which on receipt of application messages, may start an appropriate application operation. For example, a process that advertises an interface allowing defined RPCs (remote procedure calls) to be invoked by a remote client.
<b>Status requestor</b>	The BTP Actor role that requests the status of another BTP actor.
<b>Sub-composer</b>	An actor, which is not the top 'node' of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its superior and decides the outcome of its immediate branches according to the cohesive rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of the cohesion. A sub-composer can issue instructions to prepare, cancel and confirm on individual branches. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-composer must also have at least one BTP Address to which lower nodes can send BTP messages.
<b>Sub-coordinator</b>	An actor, which is not the top 'node' of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its superior and propagates the outcome to its immediate branches according to the atom rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of this atom. A sub-coordinator can issue instructions to prepare, cancel and confirm. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-coordinator must also have at least one BTP Address to which lower nodes can send BTP messages.



<b>Superior</b>	<p>The BTP role that will accept enrolments of Inferiors and subsequently inform the Inferior of the Outcome applicable to it.</p> <p>A Superior will be one of Composer, Coordinator, Sub-composer, or Sub-coordinator.</p> <p>A Superior is considered to be a Superior even if it currently has no enrolled Inferiors.</p>
<b>Superior-address</b>	<p>The set of BTP-addresses used to communicate with an actor playing the role of a Superior.</p>
<b>Superior-identifier</b>	<p>A globally unambiguous identifier of a particular Superior within a particular transaction (represented as an URI or equivalent).</p>
<b>Target-identifier</b>	<p>An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a superior-identifier, or an inferior identifier according to the nature of the role in a BTP actor that receives this identifier.</p>
<b>Terminator</b>	<p>A BTP role performed by an Application element communicating with a Decider to control the completion of the Business Transaction. Frequently will be identical to the Initiator, but distinguished because the control of the Business Transaction can be passed between Application elements.</p>
<b>Transaction</b>	<p>A complete unit of work as defined by an application. A transaction starts when a part of the distributed transaction first initiates some work that is to be a part of a new transaction. The transaction tree may grow and shrink over time and (logical) space. A transaction completes when all the participants in a transaction have completed (that is have replied to their confirm or cancel instruction).</p>

**Transaction tree**

A pattern of BTP nodes that provides the coordination of a distributed application transaction. There is single top node (a Decider) that interacts with the initiating application (which is a part of a distributed application). The Decider node has one, or more outcome relationships with other BTP nodes (sub-composer, sub-coordinator, or participant nodes). Any intermediate nodes (Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator nodes) have exactly one relationship up the tree in which they act as Inferior, and one, or more, relationships down the tree in which they act as Superior. Participants are leaves of the tree. That is they have exactly one relationship up the tree in which they act as Inferior and no down tree relationships.

**Transaction-identifier**

A globally unambiguous identifier for a particular a Decider (represented as an URI or equivalent). A Decider is the top 'node' of the transaction and thus this identifier also unambiguously identifies the transaction. Often identical to the Superior-identifier of the Decider in its role as Superior, though the protocol does not require this.

**Transmission**

The passage of a message from a sender to a receiver.

6346